



**Far North  
District Council**



**Te Kaunihera o Tai Tokerau ki te Raki**

# **AGENDA**

## **Ordinary Council Meeting**

**Thursday, 1 July 2021**

**Time:** 1.00 pm  
**Location:** Council Chamber  
Memorial Avenue  
Kaikohe

**Membership:**

Mayor John Carter - Chairperson  
Cr Ann Court  
Cr David Clendon  
Cr Dave Collard  
Cr Felicity Foy  
Cr Mate Radich  
Cr Rachel Smith  
Cr Kelly Stratford  
Cr Moko Tepania  
Cr John Vujcich

**COUNCIL MEMBERS REGISTER OF INTERESTS**

| <b>Name</b>                      | <b>Responsibility (i.e. Chairperson etc)</b>              | <b>Declaration of Interests</b>                           | <b>Nature of Potential Interest</b>  | <b>Member's Proposed Management Plan</b>   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|--|--|
| <b>Hon Mayor John Carter QSO</b> | Board Member of the Local Government Protection Programme | Board Member of the Local Government Protection Program   |  |  |
|                                  | Carter Family Trust                                       |   |  |  |
| <b>Deputy Mayor Ann Court</b>    | Waipapa Business Association                              | Member  |  | Case by case   |
|                                  | Warren Pattinson Limited                                  | Shareholder   | Building company. FNDC is a regulator and enforcer   | Case by case   |
|                                  | Kerikeri Irrigation                                       | Supplies my water   |  | No   |
|                                  | District Licensing  | N/A   | N/A  | N/A  |
|                                  | Ann Court Trust   | Private   | Private  | N/A  |
|                                  | Waipapa Rotary  | Honorary member   | Potential community funding submitter  | Declare interest and abstain from voting.  |
|                                  | Properties on Onekura Road, Waipapa                       | Owner Shareholder   | Any proposed FNDC Capital works or policy change which may have a direct impact (positive/adverse) | Declare interest and abstain from voting.  |
|                                  | Property on Daroux Dr, Waipapa                            | Financial interest  | Any proposed FNDC Capital works or policy change which may have a direct impact (positive/adverse) | Declare interest and abstain from voting.  |
|                                  | Flowers and gifts   | Ratepayer 'Thankyou'                                      | Bias/ Pre-determination?   | Declare to Governance  |
|                                  | Coffee and food   | Ratepayers sometimes 'shout' food and beverage            | Bias or pre-determination  | Case by case   |
|                                  | Staff   | N/A   | Suggestion of not being impartial or pre-determined!   | Be professional, due diligence, weigh the evidence. Be thorough, thoughtful, considered impartial and balanced. Be fair. |
|                                  | Warren Pattinson  | My husband is a builder and may do work for Council staff |  | Case by case   |
| <b>Ann Court - Partner</b>       | Warren Pattinson Limited                                  | Director  | Building Company. FNDC is a regulator  | Remain at arm's length   |
|                                  | Air NZ  | Shareholder   | None   | None   |

| Name                           | Responsibility (i.e. Chairperson etc)          | Declaration of Interests   | Nature of Potential Interest  | Member's Proposed Management Plan               |
|--------------------------------|--|--|---|---|
|                                | Warren Pattinson Limited                       | Builder  | FNDC is the consent authority, regulator and enforcer.  | Apply arm's length rules                        |
|                                | Property on Onekura Road, Waipapa              | Owner  | Any proposed FNDC capital work in the vicinity or rural plan change. Maybe a link to policy development.  | Would not submit. Rest on a case by case basis. |
| <b>David Clendon</b>           | Chairperson – He Waka Eke Noa Charitable Trust | None   |   | Declare if any issue arises                     |
|                                | Member of Vision Kerikeri                      | None   |   | Declare if any issue arises                     |
|                                | Joint owner of family home in Kerikeri         | Hall Road, Kerikeri  |   |   |
| <b>David Clendon – Partner</b> | Resident Shareholder on Kerikeri Irrigation    |  |   |   |
| <b>David Collard</b>           | Snapper Bonanza 2011 Limited                   | 45% Shareholder and Director   |   |   |
|                                | Trustee of Te Ahu Charitable Trust             | Council delegate to this board   |   |   |
| <b>Felicity Foy</b>            | Flick Trustee Ltd                              | I am the director of this company that is the company trustee of Flick Family Trust that owns properties Seaview Road – Cable Bay, and Allen Bell Drive - Kaitaia. |   |   |
|                                | Elbury Holdings Limited                        | This company is directed by my parents Fiona and Kevin King.   | This company owns several dairy and beef farms, and also dwellings on these farms. The Farms and dwellings are located in the Far North at Kaimaumau, Bird Road/Sandhills Rd, Wireless Road/ Puckey Road/Bell Road, the Awanui Straight and Allen Bell Drive. |   |
|                                | Foy Farms Partnership                          | Owner and partner in Foy Farms - a farm on Church Road, Kaingaroa  |   |   |
|                                | Foy Farms Rentals                              | Owner and rental manager of Foy Farms Rentals for 7 dwellings on Church Road,  |   |   |

| Name                          | Responsibility<br>Chairperson etc)             | (i.e. | Declaration of Interests  | Nature<br>Potential Interest                  | of<br>Member's<br>Proposed<br>Management Plan                 |
|-------------------------------|--|-------|---|---|---|
|                               |  |       | Kaingaroa and 2 dwellings on Allen Bell Drive, Kaitaia, and 1 property on North Road, Kaitaia, one title contains a cell phone tower. |   |   |
|                               | King Family Trust                              |       | This trust owns several titles/properties at Cable Bay, Seaview Rd/State Highway 10 and Ahipara - Panorama Lane.                      | These trusts own properties in the Far North. |   |
|                               | 112 Commerce Street Holdings Ltd               |       | Owner of commercial property in Commerce Street Kaitaia.  |   |   |
|                               | Foy Property Management Ltd                    |       | Owner of company that manages properties owned by Foy Farms Rentals and Flick Family Trust.   |   |   |
|                               | Previous employment at FNDC 2007-16            |       | I consider the staff members at FNDC to be my friends   |   |   |
|                               | Shareholder of Coastline Plumbing NZ Limited   |       |   |   |   |
| <b>Felicity Foy - Partner</b> | Director of Coastal Plumbing NZ Limited        |       |   |   |   |
|                               | Friends with some FNDC employees               |       |   |   |   |
| <b>Mate Radich</b>            | No form received                               |       |   |   |   |
| <b>Rachel Smith</b>           | Friends of Rolands Wood Charitable Trust       |       | Trustee   |   |   |
|                               | Mid North Family Support                       |       | Trustee   |   |   |
|                               | Property Owner                                 |       | Kerikeri  |   |   |
|                               | Friends who work at Far North District Council |       |   |   |   |
|                               | Kerikeri Cruising Club                         |       | Subscription Member   |   |   |
|                               | Vision Kerikeri                                |       | Financial Member  |   |   |
| <b>Rachel Smith (Partner)</b> | Property Owner                                 |       | Kerikeri  |   |   |
|                               | Friends who work at Far North District Council |       |   |   |   |
|                               | Kerikeri Cruising Club                         |       | Subscription Member and Treasurer   |   |   |
|                               | Vision Kerikeri                                |       | Financial Member  |   |   |
|                               | Town and General Groundcare Limited            |       | Director, Shareholder   |   |   |
| <b>Kelly Stratford</b>        | KS Bookkeeping and Administration              |       | Business Owner, provides book keeping, administration and development of environmental management plans                               | None perceived                                | Step aside from decisions that arise, that may have conflicts |



| <b>Name</b> | <b>Responsibility (i.e. Chairperson etc)</b>     | <b>Declaration of Interests</b>                        | <b>Nature of Potential Interest</b>   | <b>Member's Proposed Management Plan</b>                                  |
|-------------|--|--|---|---|
|             | Waikare Marae Trustees                           | Trustee  | Maybe perceived conflicts   | Case by case basis  |
|             | Bay of Islands College                           | Parent Elected Trustee                                 | None perceived  | If there was a conflict, I will step aside from decision making           |
|             | Karetu School                                    | Parent Elected Trustee                                 | None perceived  | If there was a conflict, I will step aside from decision making           |
|             | Māori title land – Moerewa and Waikare           | Beneficiary and husband is a shareholder               | None perceived  | If there was a conflict, I will step aside from decision making           |
|             | Sister is employed by Far North District Council |  |   | Will not discuss work/governance matters that are confidential            |
|             | Gifts - food and beverages                       | Residents and ratepayers may 'shout' food and beverage | Perceived bias or predetermination  | Case by case basis  |
|             | Taumarere Counselling Services                   | Advisory Board Member                                  | May be perceived conflicts  | Should conflict arise, step aside from voting                             |
|             | Sport Northland                                  | Board Member   | May be perceived conflicts  | Should conflict arise, step aside from voting                             |
|             | He Puna Aroha Putea Whakapapa                    | Trustee  | May be perceived conflicts  | Should conflict arise, step aside from voting should they apply for funds |
|             | Kawakawa Returned Services Association           | Member   | May be perceived conflicts  | Should conflict arise, step aside from voting should they apply for funds |
|             | Whangaroa Returned Services Association          | Member   | May be perceived conflicts  | Should conflict arise, step aside from voting should they apply for funds |
|             | National Emergency Management Advisor Committee  | Member   |   | Case by case basis  |
|             | Te Rūnanga ā Iwi o Ngāpuhi                       | Tribal affiliate member                                | As a descendent of Te Rūnanga ā Iwi o Ngāpuhi I could have a perceived conflict of interest in Te Rūnanga ā Iwi o Ngāpuhi Council relations | Declare a perceived conflict should there appear to be one                |

| Name                             | Responsibility (i.e. Chairperson etc)       | Declaration of Interests         | Nature of Potential Interest   | Member's Proposed Management Plan   |
|----------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|--|---|
|                                  | Te Rūnanga ā Iwi o Ngāti Hine               | Tribal affiliate member          | Could have a perceived conflict of interest  | Declare a perceived conflict should I determine there is a conflict         |
|                                  | Kawakawa Business and Community Association | Member                           |  | Will declare a perceived conflict should there appear to be one             |
| <b>Kelly Stratford - Partner</b> | Chef and Barista                            | Opua Store                       | None perceived   |   |
|                                  | Māori title land – Moerewa                  | Shareholder                      | None perceived   | If there was a conflict of interest I would step aside from decision making |
| <b>Moko Tepania</b>              | Teacher                                     | Te Kura Kaupapa Māori o Kaikohe. | Potential Council funding that will benefit my place of employment.  | Declare a perceived conflict  |
|                                  | Chairperson                                 | Te Reo o Te Tai Tokerau Trust.   | Potential Council funding for events that this trust runs.   | Declare a perceived conflict  |
|                                  | Tribal Member                               | Te Rūnanga o Te Rarawa           | As a descendent of Te Rarawa I could have a perceived conflict of interest in Te Rarawa Council relations.                                   | Declare a perceived conflict  |
|                                  | Tribal Member                               | Te Rūnanga o Whaingaroa          | As a descendent of Te Rūnanga o Whaingaroa I could have a perceived conflict of interest in Te Rūnanga o Whaingaroa Council relations.       | Declare a perceived conflict  |
|                                  | Tribal Member                               | Kahukuraariki Trust Board        | As a descendent of Kahukuraariki Trust Board I could have a perceived conflict of interest in Kahukuraariki Trust Board Council relations.   | Declare a perceived conflict  |
|                                  | Tribal Member                               | Te Rūnanga ā-Iwi o Ngāpuhi       | As a descendent of Te Rūnanga ā-Iwi o Ngāpuhi I could have a perceived conflict of interest in Te Rūnanga ā-Iwi o Ngāpuhi Council relations. | Declare a perceived conflict  |
| <b>John Vujcich</b>              | Board Member                                | Pioneer Village                  | Matters relating to funding and assets   | Declare interest and abstain  |

| <b>Name</b> | <b>Responsibility<br/>Chairperson etc)</b> (i.e. | <b>Declaration of Interests</b>      | <b>Nature<br/>Potential Interest</b> of                                       | <b>Member's<br/>Proposed<br/>Management Plan</b> |
|-------------|--|--------------------------------------|---|--|
|             | Director   | Waitukupata Forest Ltd               | Potential for council activity to directly affect its assets                  | Declare interest and abstain                     |
|             | Director   | Rural Service Solutions Ltd          | Matters where council regulatory function impact of company services          | Declare interest and abstain                     |
|             | Director   | Kaikohe (Rau Marama) Community Trust | Potential funder  | Declare interest and abstain                     |
|             | Partner  | MJ & EMJ Vujcich                     | Matters where council regulatory function impacts on partnership owned assets | Declare interest and abstain                     |
|             | Member   | Kaikohe Rotary Club                  | Potential funder, or impact on Rotary projects                                | Declare interest and abstain                     |
|             | Member   | New Zealand Institute of Directors   | Potential provider of training to Council                                     | Declare a Conflict of Interest                   |
|             | Member   | Institute of IT Professionals        | Unlikely, but possible provider of services to Council                        | Declare a Conflict of Interest                   |



**Far North District Council**  
**Ordinary Council Meeting**  
**will be held in the Council Chamber, Memorial Avenue, Kaikohe on:**  
**Thursday 1 July 2021 at 1.00 pm**

---

**Te Paeroa Mahi / Order of Business**

|           |   |                      |
|-----------|---|----------------------|
| <b>1</b>  | <b>Karakia Timatanga – Opening Prayer.....</b>  | <b>11</b>            |
| <b>2</b>  | <b>Ngā Whakapāha Me Ngā Pānga Mema / Apologies and Declarations of Interest.....</b>          | <b>11</b>            |
| <b>3</b>  | <b>Deputation.....</b>  | <b>11</b>            |
| <b>4</b>  | <b>Ngā Kōrero A Te Koromatua / Mayoral Announcements.....</b>                                 | <b>11</b>            |
| <b>5</b>  | <b>Confirmation of Previous Minutes.....</b>  | <b>12</b>            |
| 5.1       | Confirmation of Previous Minutes.....   | 12                   |
| <b>6</b>  | <b>Reports.....</b>   | <b>23</b>            |
| 6.1       | Kōkiri Ai te Waka Hourua Strategy (Sport Northland) .....                                     | 23                   |
| 6.2       | Subsoil Lease to FNHL - The Strand, Russell .....   | 66                   |
| 6.3       | Proposal to Construct an Erosion Protection Structure on Council Owned Reserve, Omapere ..... | 79                   |
| 6.4       | Elected Member Conference Attendance Report - 2021 Community Boards Conference .....          | 219                  |
| 6.5       | Far North Holdings - Paihia Waterfront Development  | Supplementary Agenda |
| 6.6       | Remits for Consideration at 2021 LGNZ AGM   | Supplementary Agenda |
| <b>7</b>  | <b>Information Reports.....</b>   | <b>231</b>           |
| 7.1       | Council Action Sheet Update July 2021 .....   | 231                  |
| 7.2       | Road Controlling Authorities Forum - Deputy Mayor Ann Court.....                              | 242                  |
| 7.3       | CEO Report to Council 01 March 2021 - 30 April 2021 .....                                     | 246                  |
| <b>8</b>  | <b>Te Wāhanga Tūmataiti / Public Excluded.....</b>  | <b>284</b>           |
| 8.1       | Confirmation of Previous Minutes - Public Excluded .....                                      | 284                  |
| 8.2       | Award of the Russell Landfill Operations, Waste and Recycling Contract.....                   | 284                  |
| 8.3       | Audit New Zealand Fraud Questionnaire for Governance - May 2021 2.....                        | 285                  |
| <b>9</b>  | <b>Karakia Whakamutunga – Closing Prayer.....</b>   | <b>286</b>           |
| <b>10</b> | <b>Te Kapinga Hui / Meeting Close.....</b>  | <b>286</b>           |



**1 KARAKIA TIMATANGA – OPENING PRAYER****2 NGĀ WHAKAPĀHA ME NGĀ PĀNGA MEMA / APOLOGIES AND DECLARATIONS OF INTEREST**

Members need to stand aside from decision-making when a conflict arises between their role as a Member of the Council and any private or other external interest they might have. This note is provided as a reminder to Members to review the matters on the agenda and assess and identify where they may have a pecuniary or other conflict of interest, or where there may be a perception of a conflict of interest.

If a Member feels they do have a conflict of interest, they should publicly declare that at the start of the meeting or of the relevant item of business and refrain from participating in the discussion or voting on that item. If a Member thinks they may have a conflict of interest, they can seek advice from the Chief Executive Officer or the Team Leader Democracy Support (preferably before the meeting).

It is noted that while members can seek advice the final decision as to whether a conflict exists rests with the member.

**3 DEPUTATION**

No requests for deputations were received at the time of the Agenda going to print.

**4 NGĀ KŌRERO A TE KOROMATUA / MAYORAL ANNOUNCEMENTS**

## **5 CONFIRMATION OF PREVIOUS MINUTES**

### **5.1 CONFIRMATION OF PREVIOUS MINUTES**

**File Number:** A3246610

**Author:** Marlema Baker, Meetings Administrator

**Authoriser:** Aisha Huriwai, Team Leader Democracy Services

#### **TAKE PŪRONGO / PURPOSE OF THE REPORT**

The minutes are attached to allow Council to confirm that the minutes are a true and correct record of previous meetings.

#### **TŪTOHUNGA / RECOMMENDATION**

**That Council confirms the minutes of the Council meeting held on 20 May 2021 as a true and correct record.**

#### **1) TĀHUHU KŌRERO / BACKGROUND**

Local Government Act 2002 Schedule 7 Section 28 states that a local authority must keep minutes of its proceedings. The minutes of these proceedings duly entered and authenticated as prescribed by a local authority are prima facie evidence of those meetings.

#### **2) MATAPAKI ME NGĀ KŌWHIRINGA / DISCUSSION AND OPTIONS**

The minutes of the meetings are attached.

Far North District Council Standing Orders Section 27.3 states that no discussion shall arise on the substance of the minutes in any succeeding meeting, except as to their correctness.

#### **Take Tūtohunga / Reason for the recommendation**

The reason for the recommendation is to confirm the minutes are a true and correct record of the previous meetings.

#### **3) PĀNGA PŪTEA ME NGĀ WĀHANGA TAHUA / FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS AND BUDGETARY PROVISION**

There are no financial implications or the need for budgetary provision as a result of this report.

#### **NGĀ ĀPITI HANGA / ATTACHMENTS**

- 1. 2021-05-20 Council Unconfirmed Minutes - A3198027** [↓](#) 



**Te Hōtaka Take Ōkawa / Compliance Schedule:**

Full consideration has been given to the provisions of the Local Government Act 2002 S77 in relation to decision making, in particular:

1. A Local authority must, in the course of the decision-making process,
  - a) Seek to identify all reasonably practicable options for the achievement of the objective of a decision; and
  - b) Assess the options in terms of their advantages and disadvantages; and
  - c) If any of the options identified under paragraph (a) involves a significant decision in relation to land or a body of water, take into account the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral land, water sites, waahi tapu, valued flora and fauna and other taonga.
2. This section is subject to Section 79 - Compliance with procedures in relation to decisions.

| <b>He Take Ōkawa / Compliance Requirement</b>   | <b>Te Aromatawai Kaimahi / Staff Assessment</b>  |
|---|--|
| State the level of significance (high or low) of the issue or proposal as determined by the <a href="#">Council's Significance and Engagement Policy</a>  | This is a matter of low significance.  |
| State the relevant Council policies (external or internal), legislation, and/or community outcomes (as stated in the LTP) that relate to this decision.   | This report complies with the Local Government Act 2002 Schedule 7 Section 28.   |
| State whether this issue or proposal has a District wide relevance and, if not, the ways in which the appropriate Community Board's views have been sought.   | It is the responsibility of each meeting to confirm their minutes therefore the views of another meeting are not relevant.   |
| State the possible implications for Māori and how Māori have been provided with an opportunity to contribute to decision making if this decision is significant and relates to land and/or any body of water. | There are no implications for Māori in confirming minutes from a previous meeting. Any implications on Māori arising from matters included in meeting minutes should be considered as part of the relevant report. |
| Identify persons likely to be affected by or have an interest in the matter, and how you have given consideration to their views or preferences (for example – youth, the aged and those with disabilities).  | This report is asking for minutes to be confirmed as true and correct record, any interests that affect other people should be considered as part of the individual reports.                                       |
| State the financial implications and where budgetary provisions have been made to support this decision.  | There are no financial implications or the need for budgetary provision arising from this report.  |
| Chief Financial Officer review.   | The Chief Financial Officer has not reviewed this report.  |

**MINUTES OF FAR NORTH DISTRICT COUNCIL  
ORDINARY COUNCIL MEETING  
HELD AT THE COUNCIL CHAMBER, MEMORIAL AVENUE, KAIKOHE  
ON THURSDAY, 20 MAY 2021 AT 10.00 AM**

**PRESENT:** Mayor John Carter (HWTM), Deputy Mayor Ann Court, Cr David Clendon, Cr Felicity Foy (via Teams), Cr Mate Radich, Cr Rachel Smith, Cr Kelly Stratford, Cr Moko Tepania (via Teams), Cr John Vujcich

**IN ATTENDANCE:** Adele Gardner (Te Hiku Community Board Chairperson), Belinda Ward (Bay of Islands-Whangaroa Community Board)

**STAFF PRESENT:** Shaun Clarke (Chief Executive Officer), Andy Finch (General Manager Infrastructure and Asset Management), Dean Myburgh (General Manager District Services), William J Taylor, MBE (General Manager Strategic Planning and Policy - Acting), Jacine Warmington (General Manager - Corporate Services Acting)

**1 KARAKIA TIMATANGA – OPENING PRAYER**

His Worship the Mayor commenced the meeting and Cr John Vujcich opened the meeting with a prayer.

**2 NGĀ WHAKAPĀHA ME NGĀ PĀNGA MEMA / APOLOGIES AND DECLARATIONS OF INTEREST**

**RESOLUTION 2021/17**

Moved: Mayor John Carter

Seconded: Deputy Mayor Ann Court

**That apologies from Cr Dave Collard be received and accepted.**

**CARRIED**

**3 DEPUTATION**

Mr Doug Cowie representing Comm Unity Kiwi.

**4 NGĀ KŌRERO A TE KOROMATUA / MAYORAL ANNOUNCEMENTS**

- Mayor Carter received his first COVID-19 vaccination and encouraged others to get theirs as well.
- Darren Edwards returns to Far North District Council on 24 May 2021. Mayor Carter acknowledged Will Taylor, Jacine Warmington and Scott May for stepping in to different roles.
- Mayor Carter acknowledged and thanked Chief Digital Officer Damon Campbell who has done a fantastic job. He is leaving the Far North District Council at the end of May 2021.
- Friday is national Anti-Bullying Day. Mayor Carter encouraged everyone to wear a pink shirt to show support.
- Significant Natural Areas (SNA's); staff are doing their best to inform the public around this under the direction of the Northern Regional Council.
- Northland Adventure Experience Limited (NAX): good progress made.

- Māori Wards; the scheduled representation review has been postponed. Mayor Carter believes it's sensible for Council to get together and Iwi Leaders and MOU holders to work this through.
- Last day for Kath Curtin; His Worship the Mayor acknowledged and thanks Kath for her support. Deirdre Healy will move into the EA role.

## 5 CONFIRMATION OF PREVIOUS MINUTES

### 5.1 CONFIRMATION OF PREVIOUS MINUTES

Agenda item 5.1 document number A3186894, pages 12 - 23 refers

#### **RESOLUTION 2021/18**

Moved: Mayor John Carter

Seconded: Deputy Mayor Ann Court

**That Council:**

- a) confirms the minutes of the Council meeting held on 08 April 2021 as a true and correct record.**
- b) confirms the minutes of the Extraordinary Council meeting held on 4 May 2021 as a true and correct record.**

**CARRIED**

Abstained: Cr Kelly Stratford

## 6 REPORTS

### 6.1 PAIHIA EV CHARGING STATION

Agenda item 6.1 document number A3160263, pages 23 - 30 refers

#### **RESOLUTION 2021/19**

Moved: Cr Rachel Smith

Seconded: Cr Kelly Stratford

**That Council make the three identified adjoining parking spaces on Williams Road, Paihia, exclusively available for electric vehicles (EV) while charging.**

**CARRIED**

### 6.2 NEW PARKING AND ROAD USE BYLAWS

Agenda item 6.2 document number A3183896, pages 31 - 36 refers

#### **RESOLUTION 2021/20**

Moved: Deputy Mayor Ann Court

Seconded: Cr Rachel Smith

**That Council determine, under section 155(1) of the Local Government Act 2002, that two new bylaws regulating parking and road use, made under the Land Transport Act 1998, are the most appropriate way of addressing the problems in the Far North District:**

- i) competition for space in the central business districts.**

**ii) congestion in the central business districts.****CARRIED****6.3 CONTROL OF ON-SITE WASTEWATER DISPOSAL SYSTEMS BYLAW**

Agenda item 6.3 document number A3183918, pages 37 - 50 refers

**RESOLUTION 2021/21**

Moved: Cr John Vujcich

Seconded: Deputy Mayor Ann Court

**That Council agree, under section 155(1) of the Local Government Act 2002, a bylaw is the most appropriate way of addressing problems related to the maintenance of on-site wastewater disposal systems in the Far North District.**

**CARRIED****6.4 REVIEW OF PSYCHOACTIVE SUBSTANCES LOCAL APPROVED PRODUCTS POLICY 2014**

Agenda item 6.4 document number A3183935, pages 51 - 62 refers

**RESOLUTION 2021/22**

Moved: Cr Rachel Smith

Seconded: Cr Kelly Stratford

**That Council:**

- a) agree that the Psychoactive Substances Local Approved Policy has been reviewed; and that,**
- b) agree that the Psychoactive Substance Local Approved Policy should continue without amendment.**

**CARRIED****6.5 PARKING ENFORCEMENT SERVICES**

Agenda item 6.5 document number A3193410, pages 63 - 70 refers

**RESOLUTION 2021/23**

Moved: Deputy Mayor Ann Court

Seconded: Cr Rachel Smith

**That Council:**

- a) makes application for the delegation to enforce stationary parking offences on State Highway from Waka Kotahi (the New Zealand Transport Agency); and**
- b) commences a trial period of enforcing stationary vehicle Warrants of Fitness and Registration offences across the district.**

**CARRIED**

**6.6 EXECUTIVE REVIEW COMMITTEE DELEGATIONS AND APPOINTMENT OF DEPUTY CHAIRPERSON TO THE COMMITTEE**

Agenda item 6.6 document number A3173167, pages 71 – 75 refers

**RESOLUTION 2021/24**

Moved: Cr John Vujcich

Seconded: Cr Mate Radich

**That Council:**

- a) adopt the revised Executive Review Committee delegations.**
- b) appoint Councillor Stratford as the Deputy Chairperson of the Executive Review Committee.**

**CARRIED**

Abstained: Cr Kelly Stratford

**6.7 APPOINTMENT FOR PAPA KĀINGA DEVELOPMENT - KAITĀIA EXPERT CONSENTING PANEL**

Agenda item 6.7 document number A3184429, pages 76 - 80 refers.

**RESOLUTION 2021/25**

Moved: Cr John Vujcich

Seconded: Cr Rachel Smith

**That Far North District Council nominate Councillors Clendon and Stratford to be considered as a panel member on the Papakāinga Development – Kaitāia Expert Consenting Panel.**

**CARRIED**

Abstained: Crs David Clendon and Kelly Stratford

**6.8 TE HIKU COMMUNITY BOARD CHAIRPERSON - APPOINTMENT TO COMMITTEES**

Agenda item 6.8 document number A3187304, pages 81 - 83 refers

**RESOLUTION 2021/26**

Moved: Cr John Vujcich

Seconded: Cr Rachel Smith

**That Council:**

- I. appoint Adele Gardner as a member of the Assurance, Risk and Finance Committee; and,**
- II. remove Adele Gardner from the Regulatory and Compliance Committee.**

**CARRIED**

**RESOLUTION TO EXCLUDE THE PUBLIC****RESOLUTION 2021/27**

Moved: Mayor John Carter

Seconded: Deputy Mayor Ann Court

**That the public be excluded from the following parts of the proceedings of this meeting.**

**The general subject matter of each matter to be considered while the public is excluded, the reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter, and the specific grounds under section 48 of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 for the passing of this resolution are as follows:**

| General subject of each matter to be considered | Reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter  | Ground(s) under section 48 for the passing of this resolution                                       |
|---|--|---|
| 6.9 Review On Erosion Issues For Freese Park    | S7(2)(g) - the withholding of the information is necessary to maintain legal professional privilege. | s7(2)(g) - the withholding of the information is necessary to maintain legal professional privilege |

**CARRIED**

The meeting adjourned at 11:44 am and reconvened at 12.00 pm.

## **6.9 REVIEW ON EROSION ISSUES FOR FREESE PARK**

Agenda item 6.9 document number A3103032, pages 84 - 101 refers

### **MOTION**

Moved: Mayor John Carter

Seconded: Cr John Vujcich

That Council approves:

- a) the Freese Park Erosion Management Consultation Strategy summarised in this report.
- b) the proposal to present concept designs 1A, 1B and 2 during public consultation, as presented in Attachment A.

and notes:

- c) that an extensive investigation has been conducted into the coastal erosion processes at Freese Park
- d) that erosion of the foreshore is occurring at a rate of approximately 0.7m/yr.
- e) a high-level options assessment has led to the selection of 'hold the line' as a preferred solution to the erosion issue. This will involve constructing a rock riprap structure of some description at the existing alignment of the erosion scarp. Advancing the seawall seawards towards the Mean High-Water Springs (MHWS) mark is also possible but is dependent on cost, consenting and public preference. Two options (one option includes two sub-options) have been presented (Attachment A).

### **AMENDMENT**

Moved: Cr David Clendon

Seconded: Cr Rachel Smith

That Council approves

- b) the proposal to present concept designs 1A, 1B, 2 and 3 during public consultation, as presented in Attachment A.

**CARRIED**

Abstained: Crs David Clendon and Kelly Stratford

The amendment became the substantive motion.

**RESOLUTION 2021/33**

Moved: Cr David Clendon

Seconded: Cr Rachel Smith

**That Council approves:**

- a) the Freese Park Erosion Management Consultation Strategy summarised in this report.
- b) the proposal to present concept designs 1A, 1B, 2 and 3 during public consultation, as presented in Attachment A.

**and notes:**

- c) that an extensive investigation has been conducted into the coastal erosion processes at Freese Park.
- d) that erosion of the foreshore is occurring at a rate of approximately 0.7m/yr.
- e) a high-level options assessment has led to the selection of 'hold the line' as a preferred solution to the erosion issue. This will involve constructing a rock riprap structure of some description at the existing alignment of the erosion scarp. Advancing the seawall seawards towards the Mean High-Water Springs (MHWS) mark is also possible but is dependent on cost, consenting and public preference. Two options (one option includes two sub-options) have been presented (Attachment A).

**CARRIED**

Against: Cr Rachel Smith

**6.10 LEASE 13 HOMESTEAD ROAD TO MID NORTH TILING LTD**

Agenda item 6.10 document number A3155713, pages 102 - 105 refers

**RESOLUTION 2021/34**

Moved: Deputy Mayor Ann Court

Seconded: Cr Kelly Stratford

**That Council:**

- a) approves a lease for the property at 13 Homestead Road, Kerikeri being Lot 1 DP 86471 to Mid-North Tiling Ltd at or as close to market rent as possible and on standard commercial lease terms.
- b) approves that the lease shall be for a maximum term of 3 years commencing 1 June 2021 and shall contain a clause that enables Council to terminate the lease giving at least six months' notice should at any time during the term Council requires possession of any part or the whole of the property.
- c) approves that the GM Corporate Services is authorised to negotiate the final rent and terms and conditions of the lease.

**CARRIED**

The meeting adjourned at 1:15 pm and resumed at 1:30pm

**7 INFORMATION REPORTS**

Cr Stratford returned to the meeting 1:38 pm.

**7.1 COMMUNITY BOARD UPDATES APRIL 2021**

Agenda item 7.1 document number A3190781, pages 106 - 121 refers

**RESOLUTION 2021/36**

Moved: Mayor John Carter

Seconded: Cr John Vujcich

**That Council note the following Community Board minutes:**

- a) **Bay of Islands-Whangaroa Community Board, 1 April 2021**
- b) **Te Hiku Community Board, 6 April 2021**
- c) **Kaikohe-Hokianga Community Board, 7 April 2021**

**CARRIED**

**8 PUBLIC EXCLUDED****RESOLUTION TO EXCLUDE THE PUBLIC****RESOLUTION 2021/37**

Moved: Mayor John Carter

Seconded: Cr Mate Radich

That the public be excluded from the following parts of the proceedings of this meeting.

The general subject matter of each matter to be considered while the public is excluded, the reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter, and the specific grounds under section 48 of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 for the passing of this resolution are as follows:

| <b>General subject of each matter to be considered</b>          | <b>Reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter</b>   | <b>Ground(s) under section 48 for the passing of this resolution</b>  |
|---|--|---|
| <b>8.1 - Confirmation of Previous Minutes - Public Excluded</b> | <p>s7(2)(a) - the withholding of the information is necessary to protect the privacy of natural persons, including that of deceased natural persons</p> <p>s7(2)(b)(ii) - the withholding of the information is necessary to protect information where the making available of the information would be likely unreasonably to prejudice the commercial position of the person who supplied or who is the subject of the information</p> <p>s7(2)(f)(i) - free and frank expression of opinions by or between or to members or officers or employees of any local authority</p> <p>s7(2)(h) - the withholding of the information is necessary to enable Council to carry out, without prejudice or</p> | <p>s48(1)(a)(i) - the public conduct of the relevant part of the proceedings of the meeting would be likely to result in the disclosure of information for which good reason for withholding would exist under section 6 or section 7</p> |



|   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
|   | disadvantage, commercial activities   |  |
| <b>8.2 - Rating Valuation and Database Maintenance Services Contract</b>        | s7(2)(b)(ii) - the withholding of the information is necessary to protect information where the making available of the information would be likely unreasonably to prejudice the commercial position of the person who supplied or who is the subject of the information   | s48(1)(a)(i) - the public conduct of the relevant part of the proceedings of the meeting would be likely to result in the disclosure of information for which good reason for withholding would exist under section 6 or section 7 |
| <b>8.3 - Governance of Northland Adventure Experience Limited (NAX)</b>         | s7(2)(f)(i) - free and frank expression of opinions by or between or to members or officers or employees of any local authority   | s48(1)(a)(i) - the public conduct of the relevant part of the proceedings of the meeting would be likely to result in the disclosure of information for which good reason for withholding would exist under section 6 or section 7 |
| <b>8.4 - Lease 11 Matthews Ave, Kaitaia (former Warehouse) to Northland DHB</b> | s7(2)(b)(ii) - the withholding of the information is necessary to protect information where the making available of the information would be likely unreasonably to prejudice the commercial position of the person who supplied or who is the subject of the information<br><br>s7(2)(i) - the withholding of the information is necessary to enable Council to carry on, without prejudice or disadvantage, negotiations (including commercial and industrial negotiations) | s48(1)(a)(i) - the public conduct of the relevant part of the proceedings of the meeting would be likely to result in the disclosure of information for which good reason for withholding would exist under section 6 or section 7 |
| <b>CARRIED</b>  |   |  |

## 9 CONFIRMATION OF INFORMATION AND DECISIONS TO BE RELEASED IN PUBLIC

### RESOLUTION 2021/38

Moved: Mayor John Carter

Seconded: Cr Kelly Stratford

**That Council confirms that the information and decisions contained in the part of the meeting held with public excluded be restated in public meeting as follows:**

- **Item 8.3 Governance Of Northland Adventure Experience Limited (NAX)**

### RESOLUTION 2021/39

Moved: Mayor John Carter

Seconded: Cr Mate Radich

**That Council approve and endorse the Chief Executive signing of the:**

- Northern Adventure Experience Ltd Shareholders Agreement.**
- Share Transfer Certificate.**

**c) Shareholders Resolution.**

**and that Council:**

**d) approve the Northern Adventure Experience Ltd Constitution.**

**CARRIED**

Abstained: Cr Mate Radich

**11 KARAKIA WHAKAMUTUNGA – CLOSING PRAYER**

Cr Stratford closed the meeting with a karakia.

**12 MEETING CLOSE**

The meeting closed at 2:49 pm.

The minutes of this meeting will be confirmed at the Ordinary Council Meeting held on 1 July 2021.

.....  
**CHAIRPERSON**

## 6 REPORTS

### 6.1 KŌKIRI AI TE WAKA HOURUA STRATEGY (SPORT NORTHLAND)

**File Number:** A3259832

**Author:** Ana Mules, Team Leader - Community Development and Investment

**Authoriser:** Darren Edwards, General Manager - Strategic Planning and Policy

#### TAKE PŪRONGO / PURPOSE OF THE REPORT

To seek support in principle for the Kōkiri ai Te Waka Hourua Regional Sports, Active Recreation and Play Strategy.

#### WHAKARĀPOOTO MATUA / EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

- Sport Northland have commissioned the development of a regional sport, active recreation and play strategy called Kōkiri ai Te Waka Hourua 2021-2030
- There is also a Far North Spaces and Places Implementation Plan under development, linking in parks and reserves
- These documents aim to provide high-level strategic frameworks to guide Council's future decision making and Council staff from the across the business have contributed to their development
- Sports, recreation, parks and play contribute greatly to community wellbeing and under the Local Government Act 2002 it is Council's obligation to "...*promote the social, economic, environmental, and cultural wellbeing of communities, in the present and for the future*"
- From an operations perspective, the accountability and responsibility for advocating and supporting sports, recreation, parks and play in the Far North District is not with any single role, team or group within Council. This includes the accountability and responsibility for the implementation of any new initiatives that would come from an implementation plan for a Strategy like Kōkiri ai Te Waka Hourua 2021-2030.
- Staff anticipate high sector and community expectations to deliver Kōkiri ai Te Waka Hourua and the Far North Spaces and Places Plan, while being aware of the resourcing limitations staff are currently working under that are likely to impact on successful implementation.
- This report was presented to the Strategy and Policy Committee meeting on 15 June 2021. The Strategy and Policy Committee makes the following recommendation to Council.
- The Strategy and Policy Committee also resolved that an update report will be presented back to the Committee at the first Committee meeting in 2020.

#### TŪTOHUNGA / RECOMMENDATION

**That Council supports in principle the Kōkiri ai Te Waka Hourua Regional Sports, Active Recreation and Play Strategy to allow time to plan how this strategy will be resourced and implemented.**

#### 1) TĀHUHU KŌRERO / BACKGROUND

Sport Northland has commissioned Recreation, Sports and Leisure (RSL) consultants to work with key stakeholders (e.g. hauora organisations, councils, sporting codes, communities and Sport New Zealand) to develop a regional sport, active recreation and play strategy. The strategy provides a snapshot of the current situation in the region including key demographics, participation trends, challenges, opportunities and advantages.

The strategy is called Kōkiri ai Te Waka Hourua 2021-2030 and was completed on 7 April 2021 [Attachment One]. It covers the Far North, Kaipara and Whangarei Districts' and provides a high-level strategic framework to guide future decision making for play, active recreation and sport. For councils this means informing future long-term and annual plans.

Sitting under this strategy will be a Far North Spaces and Places Implementation Plan, which is currently in development. This is also being led by RSL and is due for completion by 23 July 2021.

Council staff from across the business have contributed to the development of both the Strategy and Plan.

## 2) MATAPAKI ME NGĀ KŌWHIRINGA / DISCUSSION AND OPTIONS

The current independent review of local government is likely to support a move away from the 'transactional relationships' councils often have with communities, to 'sustainable relationships' with a requirement that councils are more accountable to their communities, forming partnerships with mana whenua and central/local government to better provide for the social, environmental, cultural, and economic wellbeing of communities.

In this context, sports, recreation and play contribute greatly to community wellbeing. Communities that participate in sport and recreation develop strong social bonds, are safer places and the people who live there are generally healthier and happier than in places where physical activity isn't a priority. Kōkiri ai Te Waka Hourua considers not just the activities and programmes delivered, but also the spaces and places that support play, active recreation and sport activities across Te Tai Tokerau/Northland. The Far North Spaces and Places Plan currently in development will explore this further, so it is therefore useful to bring parks and reserves, a natural fit, into this discussion – connecting people and place.

### Benefits of Sport, Recreation, Parks and Play

| Social                                   | Environmental                | Economic  | Cultural                           |
|--|------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|
| Develops Personal Development and Growth | Reduces Pollution            | Reduces Healthcare Costs                                      | Connected Families                 |
| Physical Health                          | Promotes Clean Air and Water | Reduces Vandalism and Crime                                   | Strengths Social Bonding           |
| Self Esteem and Self Reliance            | Preserves Open Space         | Enhances Property Value                                       | Promotes Ethnic & Cultural Harmony |
| Creativity and Sense of Accomplishment   | Protects the Ecosystem       | Catalyst for Tourism  | Reduces Alienation                 |
| Creates More Fun                         | Increases Community Pride    | Community spend (cafes, accommodation etc)                    | Develops Strong Communities        |
| Enhances Pleasure                        |                              | Employment (ground keepers, referees, event's organisers etc) | Connects to whenua/land            |
| Reduces Stress                           |                              |   |                                    |
| Increases Life Satisfaction              |                              |   |                                    |
| Promotes Psychological Wellbeing         |                              |   |                                    |

From a legal perspective, it is Council's obligation under Sections 3 and 10 of the Local Government Act 2002 (LGA) to *"...promote the social, economic, environmental, and cultural wellbeing of communities, in the present and for the future"*. In the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) Section 5, the purpose is to *"...promote the sustainable management of natural and physical resources in a way, or at a rate, which enables people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural wellbeing and for their health and safety while;*

- sustaining the potential of natural and physical resources (excluding minerals) to meet the reasonably foreseeable needs of future generations; and*
- safeguarding the life-supporting capacity of air, water, soil, and ecosystems; and*
- avoiding, remedying, or mitigating any adverse effects of activities on the environment.*

Also relevant is Section 1 (Reserves and Parks Management and Preservation) of the Council's current 2017 Reserves Policy, in which item 16 states: *"Council may encourage other bodies and individuals to meet the recreation, leisure, and amenity needs of the district by providing land, works and services, and funding"*.

Both documents also compliment Council's draft 80-year strategy FN2100 based on our vision 'He Whenua Rangatira - a district of sustainable prosperity and wellbeing'. This states that Council intends to;

*"... reflect the ambition and dreams of Far North communities" and that "... much of what the Council does has long-lasting impacts on the communities of the Far North. Many of the parks, playgrounds, roads, water supply and other services were conceived decades ago, and they continue to serve us now and into the future. That means our decision making needs to be far-sighted."*

There is also an equity issue to consider, as the strategy states *"...students at high decile schools are more involved in sport (69.4%) than those in medium (43%) and low decile schools (48.2%)."* There are 72 schools in the Far North District. 62 (86%) are low decile, 8 are mid decile and 2 are high decile. Affordability is also highlighted in the strategy, including the cost of travel and participation in play, active recreation and sport and the limited ability to fund maintenance of facilities and operations, including programmes. Declining volunteerism is also a key sector challenge, with the declining availability of volunteers including referees, coaches, administrators. Facility quality and distribution is also identified as a challenge; however it is noted that there are a number of facility projects currently underway across the region, which are an important part of the ongoing work towards resolving some of the facility gaps identified. Other key opportunities include working in partnership, changing funding models, increased promotion and supporting community-led initiatives. For example, the strategy suggests that in our more rural remote areas, our resources might be better used assisting to *"...develop marae to include provisions for participation including adequate accessible playground/areas for tamariki, space for kaumatua/kuia to enjoy physical movement, and other provisions based on local whānau needs/wants"*.

From an operations perspective, the functions and accountabilities of sports, recreation, parks and play has no single 'home' within Council and resources are spread across the organisation. There are currently external frustrations felt working with Council in this space, and there were submissions made to the 2021-2031 LTP to this effect. Staff anticipate high sector and community expectations to deliver Kōkiri ai Te Waka Hourua and the Far North Spaces and Places Plan, while being aware of the resourcing limitations staff are currently working under that are likely to impact on successful implementation. This is a risk to Council that should be considered, however with the future implementation Kōkiri ai Te Waka Hourua there is also an opportunity for Council to use the guidance that the strategy provides to do things better and differently in this space. It should also be noted that not everything in the strategy is new, unplanned, unbudgeted work. For example, *"... Advocate to Waka Kotahi (NZTA) for improved pathways (for walking and cycling) to provide safer recreation opportunities"* is something staff are already delivering through the Integrated Transport Plan and current work programmes.

We need to acknowledge that Council is not currently resourced to give full effect to the strategy and therefore recommend that Council ‘support in principle’ rather than ‘adopt’ until such time as further consideration is given to reviewing resource requirements to deliver on this strategy.

### Options

| Option No. | Option   | Advantages   | Disadvantages  |
|------------|--|--|--|
| 1          | Support in principle the Kōkiri ai Te Waka Hourua strategy | Allows time to plan out how this strategy will be implemented and who will ‘drive’ it, including preparing business cases for annual and long-term plans | Key stakeholders frustrated by slow progress within Far North District and support for strategy could appear to be ‘tepid’.                              |
| 2          | Adopt the Kōkiri ai Te Waka Hourua strategy                | Gives the impression that implementation is more immediate, and that Council is fully supportive and resourced to deliver everything in the strategy     | Without required resources like project owner/‘driver’ or budgets, implementation is likely to be unsuccessful.  |
| 3          | Do not support the Kōkiri ai Te Waka Hourua strategy       | No extra resourcing required and focus on BAU can continue without interruption  | Opportunity lost to review and improve how we deliver on sports, rec, parks and play in the Far North.<br><br>Breakdown in relationships in this sector. |

### Take Tūtohunga / Reason for the recommendation

Option 1 is recommended - *support in principle the Kōkiri ai Te Waka Hourua strategy* - as there are resourcing issues that need to be addressed to ensure the successful implementation of Kōkiri ai Te Waka Hourua.

### 3) PĀNGA PŪTEA ME NGĀ WĀHANGA TAHUA / FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS AND BUDGETARY PROVISION

The Far North population is forecast to continue to rise, the demands on current and the development of new sports, recreation, parks and play facilities will only increase.

Kōkiri ai Te Waka Hourua has missed the 2021-31 LTP cycle, however with business cases, projects will be able to be included in future Annual/Long Term Plans.

There is also a staff resourcing issue, with sports, recreation, parks and play being spread across the organisation, with no single point of contact and therefore no clear ‘driver’ of this strategy.

### ĀPITIHINGA / ATTACHMENTS

1. Kōkiri ai Te Waka Hourua Strategy - A3186630 [↓](#) 

**Hōtaka Take Ōkawa / Compliance Schedule:**

Full consideration has been given to the provisions of the Local Government Act 2002 S77 in relation to decision making, in particular:

1. A Local authority must, in the course of the decision-making process,
  - a) Seek to identify all reasonably practicable options for the achievement of the objective of a decision; and
  - b) Assess the options in terms of their advantages and disadvantages; and
  - c) If any of the options identified under paragraph (a) involves a significant decision in relation to land or a body of water, take into account the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral land, water sites, waahi tapu, valued flora and fauna and other taonga.
2. This section is subject to Section 79 - Compliance with procedures in relation to decisions.

| <b>He Take Ōkawa / Compliance Requirement</b>  | <b>Aromatawai Kaimahi / Staff Assessment</b>   |
|--|--|
| State the level of significance (high or low) of the issue or proposal as determined by the <a href="#">Council's Significance and Engagement Policy</a> | <p>The level of significance is considered to be low for the following reasons;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· any financial implications can be planned for over time</li> <li>· the document is not a statutory requirement</li> <li>· it is consistent with legislation and council policies.</li> </ul>  |
| State the relevant Council policies (external or internal), legislation, and/or community outcomes (as stated in the LTP) that relate to this decision.  | <p>Council's community development framework is relevant as it defines the approach we take in supporting the development of Far North communities. The framework includes;</p> <p>Increasing opportunities for communities to determine the things they care about,</p> <p>Providing communities a chance to have their say and engage in meaningful dialogue on the things that affect them</p> <p>Empowering communities to design, prioritise and engage on local initiatives</p> <p>Building community spirit</p> <p>The following Long Term Plan community outcomes are also considered to be of relevance;</p> <p>Communities that are healthy, safe, connected and sustainable</p> <p>Proud, vibrant communities</p> <p>Prosperous communities supported by a sustainable economy</p> <p>A wisely-managed and treasured environment that recognises the special role of tangata whenua as kaitiaki</p> <p>The strategy also supports the delivery of FN2100, Council's vision of He Whenua Rangatira and Sections 3 and 10 of Local Government Act 2002 to "...promote the</p> |

|   |   |
|---|---|
|   | <p><i>social, economic, environmental, and cultural wellbeing of communities, in the present and for the future” and the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) Section 5, to “...promote the sustainable management of natural and physical resources in a way, or at a rate, which enables people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural wellbeing and for their health and safety.”</i></p> <p>Also relevant is Section 1 (Reserves and Parks Management and Preservation) of the Council’s current 2017 Reserves Policy, in which item 16 states: “<i>Council may encourage other bodies and individuals to meet the recreation, leisure, and amenity needs of the district by providing land, works and services, and funding</i>”.</p> |
| State whether this issue or proposal has a District wide relevance and, if not, the ways in which the appropriate Community Board’s views have been sought.   | <p>This strategy has regional relevance.</p> <p>Implementation needs to work closely with the Community Boards, with these Boards having delegations for "civic amenities", including;</p> <p>Amenity lightingFootpaths/cycle ways and walkwaysPublic toiletsReservesHallsSwimming poolsLindvart Park – a Kaikohe-Hokianga Community Board civic amenity.</p>   |
| State the possible implications for Māori and how Māori have been provided with an opportunity to contribute to decision making if this decision is significant and relates to land and/or any body of water. | <p>Iwi, hapū and whanau engaged in the development of this strategy via working groups and surveys and the strategy separates out challenges directly affecting Māori so that these can be effectively addressed.</p>   |
| Identify persons likely to be affected by or have an interest in the matter, and how you have given consideration to their views or preferences (for example – youth, the aged and those with disabilities).  | <p>The strategy, or more specifically the implementation of the strategy, will be of interest to a large proportion of the Northland population. Sports, recreation, parks and play is something our communities really care about.</p> <p>A great deal of effort has gone into the strategy by Sport Northland and RSL to capture the thoughts and aspirations of everyone affected.</p>   |
| State the financial implications and where budgetary provisions have been made to support this decision.  | <p>Kōkiri ai Te Waka Hourua has financial implications. It has missed the 2021-31 LTP cycle, however projects may be able to be included in future Annual/Long Term Plans.</p> <p>There is also a staff resourcing issue, with sports, rec, parks and play being spread across the organisation, no single point of contact and therefore no clear ‘driver’ of this strategy, including writing and business cases for future financial planning.</p>   |
| Chief Financial Officer review.   | <p>The Chief Financial Officer has reviewed this report.</p>  |





## KŌKIRI

1. (verb) (-tia) to thrust forward, attack, call, charge, rush forward.
2. (verb) (-hia,-tia) to champion (a cause), promote, advocate, lead.
3. (verb) to rise in a column.
4. (noun) attack, assault, charge, offensive, strike.
5. (noun) body of men rushing forward, attack party, forward movement of a kapa haka.

## MOVING

1. (adjective) in motion (adjective) changing or capable of changing position

## WAKA HOURUA

Double-hulled canoe

## MOVEMENT

1. (noun) action, motion, exercise, progress, progression





## Introduction - He Timatanga Kōrero



He waka hourua, he waka eke noa  
E mihi ana ki ngā mate kua wheturangitia haere hoki atu  
ki hawaiki nui hawaiki roa hawaiki pamamao.  
Huri noa ki a tatou te kanohi ora, e mihi ana.

We acknowledge those who have passed on and now  
live in the spiritual world  
We acknowledge the living, and give thanks for our  
continued existence  
Greetings to you all.

This strategy sets out the vision for the future of the play,  
active recreation and sport in Te Tai Tokerau and provides  
high-level strategic guidance for everyone in the sector.  
It identifies future priorities for the region to focus on  
to improve participation levels and access to play, active  
recreation and sporting opportunities across the region.

The strategy provides a snapshot of the current situation in the region including key demographics, participation trends, challenges, opportunities and advantages. It is intended to inform the development of future Long-term and Annual Plans for Councils and key organisations working within the sector, including funders. It considers the spaces, places and programmes that support play, active recreation and sport activities in the region.

It was developed in a spirit of partnership with input from a wide range of organisations, clubs, community groups and interested individuals across the region. Thanks to everyone who contributed through the survey, community workshops, hui, stakeholder meetings and consultation process. A strong desire for a more active future for Te Tai Tokerau was clearly expressed.

This strategy covers the Far North, Kaipara and Whangarei Districts of Te Tai Tokerau(Northland).



In support of the Tuia 250 movement, Te Tai Tokerau recognises the extraordinary voyaging traditions and cultures of Te Moana Nui a Kiwa, the exceptional feats of Pacific voyages, mātauranga, innovation, non-instrument navigation prowess and their decision to settle in Aotearoa many generations ago.

In addition to the voyaging traditions, a way of life for Māori was established as they settled in Aotearoa many generations ago. Many of these traditions and practises are still used today and are continuing to be acknowledged and seen as a way of life for Māori.

Kōrero paki highlight the feats of tupuna Māori including Kupe, Rahiri, Te Houtaewa, Kawiti and other tupuna who took full advantage of their natural abilities and Te Taiao to create an adventurous life that in today's society is relevant to the play, active recreation and sport sector.

The vision is to set out a strategy that caters for whānau, hapū, iwi Māori across Te Tai Tokerau to thrive as Māori within the sector.

As well as visiting our past, it is also important to acknowledge key moments of history for Māori and acknowledge Te Tai Tokerau as being the home for He Whakaputanga and Te Tiriti o Waitangi.

These documents acknowledge the mana of the articles of He Whakaputanga and Te Tiriti o Waitangi and in doing so acknowledges Māori as mana whenua.

This document looks to create a bi-cultural future for play, active recreation and sport in Te Tai Tokerau. The name of the document reflects a desire to create this future under the waka hourua partnership allowing people to give effect from a tangata whenua and tangata tiriti approach.

It is appropriate to acknowledge the time, effort, knowledge and experiences shared by whānau throughout Te Tai Tokerau who contributed to this strategy and provided insights into the challenges, the realities and a way forward for Māori participation across Te Tai Tokerau within the sector.

## Purpose - Te Kaupapa o Te Rautaki

This strategy and its insights will help guide our approach, programme of work and how best to undertake planning for future provision. By working in a collaborative manner, a view of the priorities for future play, active recreation and sport needs has been developed. It is intended this will help guide Councils across Te Tai Tokerau, and relevant funding agencies, in their decision making. It will help the sector as a whole, be better informed as to what the needs, rather than wants, are across the region and its districts.

## Strategic Fit - He rautaki e here ngā kōrero

This strategy provides a high-level strategic framework to guide future decision making for play, active recreation and sport. The diagram below acknowledges the importance of the need for the regional strategy to be supported by district level, facility and programmes focussed plans and strategies. Whangārei, Kaipara and the Far North district level plans, will help inform future reviews of the over-arching regional strategy and will collectively inform council long term plans (LTPs) and work programmes across the full range of sector organisations.





**"Our whānau loves sports"**  
- survey respondent

**"I support anything that keeps Northlanders active"**  
- survey respondent

**"Working together as a community is important. Another code should never be treated as a threat, we all want the same thing and should work together" – survey respondent**



## Current Context - Te Horopaki o tēnēi wā

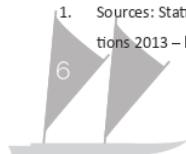
Covid-19 is continuing to have a significant impact on New Zealand and all communities and sectors. It provides opportunities for strategic change, doing things differently and better in the play, active recreation and sport sector at all levels.

“It’s timely post the COVID experience to rethink the whole sector and how this could be flipped or reimagined for the 21st century and beyond” – survey respondent

### Demographics

- Regional population was 179,076 in 2018, a 21% increase from 2006.
- Northland population projected to reach 196,700 by 2043.
- All districts in the region have grown steadily since 2006 - Kaipara 26%, Whangarei 22%, Far North 17%.
- 51% of residents live in the Whangarei District, 36% in Far North and 13% in Kaipara.
- Median age in the region is 42.6 years, the median age for Māori is 27.2 years.
- A 126% projected increase in the 65+ age group (2013-2043), to become 35.9% of the regional population.
- Adults over 65+ projected to reach 80,440 by 2043, more than the 0-14 (43,300) and 15-29 (34,490) age groups combined.
- 36% of the population identified as Māori in 2018, of this approximately 45% were under 20 years old.
- It is projected Māori will make up 39% of Northland’s population by 2033<sup>1</sup>.

1. Sources: Statistics NZ Census Counts usually resident population counts, 2006, 2013, and 2018 Censuses. (2018 Data set); Statistics NZ 2018 Census Place Summaries Northland Region; Statistics NZ Subnational Population projections 2013 – high series; Northland Population Projections by Age Group 2013 – High Series





Deprivation

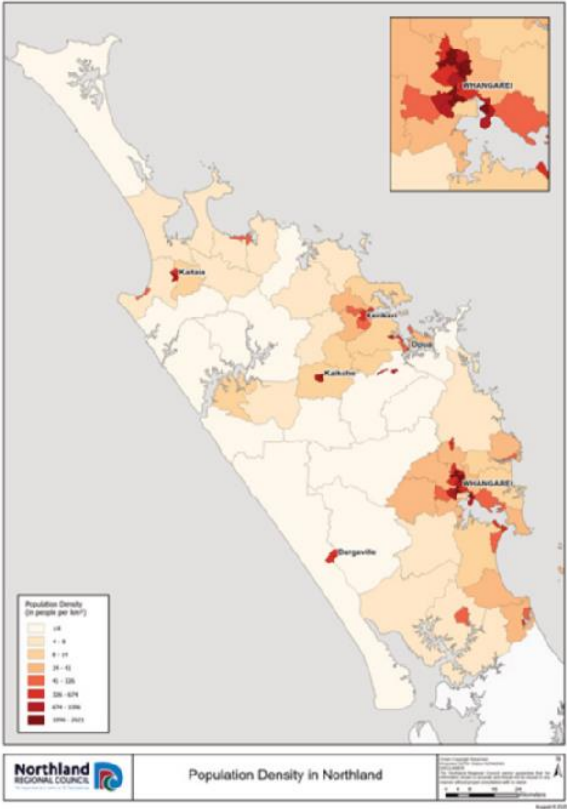
New Zealand Index of Multiple Deprivation

Te Tai Tokerau has the largest proportion of highly deprived areas in New Zealand.



Population Density

There are many small communities spread throughout the region, many are not large enough to sustain anything other than basic play, active recreation and sport amenities.



## Participation Trends - Ngā Tatauranga o Te Tai Tokerau

### Regional Participation Trends

- Only 67% of Northland adults are active (72% nationally).
- Less Northlanders are physically active for 5 hours or more per week (38.9% compared to 43.8% nationally).
- Less Northlanders achieve at least 2.5 hours of activity per week (43.3% compared to 49.5% nationally).
- Northlanders are more likely to participate in little or no physical activity (16.6% compared to 14.3% nationally).

There is no representation of team-based sports in the top 15 activities for Northland, individual activities such as 'playing games' or an 'individual workout' are more common. Therefore, support for informal, active recreation and play is very important.

High ranked activities such as swimming, jogging/running, playing games and individual workout occur in a range of settings, natural and built.

Northland provides a great natural environment; how can this be better leveraged to support Northlanders being active?

### Activity trends for young people in Northland:

- 93% of young people are active (compared to 94% nationally)
- Student involvement in secondary school sport has increased from 42% in 2005 to 45% in 2019.
- students at high decile schools are more involved in sport (69.4%) than those in medium (43%) and low decile schools (48.2%)

### When compared to Northland as a whole Māori have:

- lower rates of physical activity overall.
- higher team sports participation.

A high portion of Māori participation is in ways that are not always recognised as traditional sport and recreation. It is instead a lifestyle and way of living that is purposeful, that benefits the whole whānau (whānau centric) and due to the humble nature of our people, it is not always classed as being physically active by the participants themselves. Providing for whānau and/or hui through diving/hunting/māra kai, rongoa Māori is seen as a purposeful activity.

Te Taiao – connection to and through the natural environment provides physical activities that are challenging and purposeful.

Kaitiakitanga – guardianship of our awa, moana, taha moana, whenua, ngahere, wāhi tapu.

Exploring and reliving the ways of our tupuna. Warfare skill development – traditional Māori movement, taonga takāro, and mau rakau.

Kapa haka a way for Māori to express themselves, retell kōrero through waiata, haka, moteatea, poi and connect with the realm of Ngā mahi a te rehia.

The practise of karakia provides balance in the space of tapu and noa to all activities that are carried out by whānau.





## Regional Advantages - Ngā Painga o Te Tai Tokerau

Te Tai Tokerau has some key advantages when it comes to play, active recreation and sport. Arguably, the key advantage is it has the best natural environment (Te Taiao) and climate of anywhere in the country to be active. Identified advantages are:

- Climate
- Te Taiao (natural environment.)
- Provision of play, active recreation and sport facilities by state schools and state integrated schools is important for local access, particularly for small communities.
- Working together – for example, the Northland Sports Coalition.
- Regional Sports Facilities Rate – provides crucial funding support to many sport facility projects.
- Tourism facilities available to community – tourism provides some access to facilities that might not otherwise be available to locals.
- Some first class facilities – that bring events and economic benefits to the region and also provide for regional use.

### Advantages for Māori

- Whakapapa to whenua is a huge advantage for Māori in accessing Te Taiao and purposeful activities that engage them ā tinana ā wairua.
- Hard physical workers and providers for whānau.
- Based on the marae model, everyone has a role on the marae and therefore our whānau are strong in volunteerism and being resourceful to provide opportunities to engage. Koha atu, koha mai.
- Whakapapa and mātauranga create a deeper and meaningful connection for some.
- Connection with our culture, our reo, our tikanga.
- Stories of our history show our tupuna were strong, intelligent, resilient physical people. It is in our DNA.

These are all huge advantages for those that are connected as there is a sense of belonging and knowing our place in this world.



**“Make the most of our incredible environment e.g. bush, water sports, recreation” - survey respondent**



## Challenges - Ngā wero o Te Tai Tokerau

### Key strategic challenges in Te Tai Tokerau:

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Population Distribution                        | "It can be hard to find enough teams, or (players for), full 15 or 13 a-side teams. Regular small sided, (7 or 9 a-side), competition would be more realistic" - survey respondent |
| Equity Issues                                  | There are social and economic barriers that limit opportunities for some people to participate and thrive in play, active recreation and sport.                                    |
| Transport Challenges                           | The need to travel and the distances involved can put people off participating.  |
| Small Ratepayer Base and Limited Council Funds | Councils must carefully balance delivery of all core services including support for play, active recreation and sport.   |





The specific insights, challenges and opportunities information summarised in the following pages was gained from community engagement, including specific consultation with Māori.

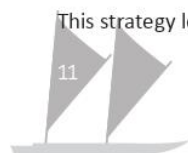
**Key sector challenges:**

- Declining volunteerism - the availability of volunteers including referees, coaches, administrators.
- Membership retention - including youth drop-off and youth leaving the region.
- Funding and operational sustainability - ability to fund maintenance of facilities and operations, including programmes. Resources required for compliance.
- Affordability - RSO & NSO affiliation fees affect affordability.
- Accessibility for all.
- Facility distribution and quality throughout the region.
- Centralisation of competitions and facilities can challenge the ability to deliver to local communities.
- Improving awareness of existing opportunities.
- Active recreation and play are not 'organised' and do not have a voice.
- Skill gaps within the sector in volunteer and paid roles.
- Changing expectations and demands for enhanced services including paid staff.

**Key challenges for Māori:**

- Accessibility to facilities / spaces.
- A sense of disconnect is felt in spaces and places around the rohe (area) by Māori due to the foreign environment.
- Access to information.
- Cost of travel and participation in play, active recreation and sport.
- The level of service in smaller communities tends to drop off making it more difficult to access opportunities.
- Lack of time to volunteer and coach – many other responsibilities and commitments to our own people first.
- Some are disconnected to whānau, hapū, iwi and therefore lack understanding and connection with whakapapa, mātauranga, Te Taiao and a whānau centric approach or way of living.

This strategy looks to leverage advantages and minimise the impact of challenges.



## Opportunities - Ngā whai wāhitanga

There are a number of key opportunities to help increase participation in play, active recreation and sport across the region.

- Recruiting, upskilling and supporting volunteers.
- Multi-use facilities.
- Sport and active recreation delivering wider community benefits.
- Maximising connection with the natural environment.
- Working in partnership within and outside the sector.
- Changing the way the sector is funded.
- Having local facilities that meet basic needs.
- Increased promotion of sport and active recreation activities that are available.
- Community driven approaches.
- Quality programmes and opportunities that cater to all levels of interest, diversity.
- Increasing informal, casual participation opportunities.



12

### Opportunities for Māori

- Reflecting the whakapapa/mātauranga/history of areas in parks, facilities, maunga, moana, awa, roto.
- Exercising kaitiakitanga/ taking ownership of and working with the people to maintain and look after parks and local spaces that fall in their boundaries.
- Having appropriate names of spaces and places that reflect the community.
- Sharing a Māori approach; whānau centric; marae model for volunteerism and governance and active kaitiakitanga through development, establishment and review of sector-wide activities.
- Developing marae to include provisions for participation including adequate accessible playground/areas for tamariki, space for kaumatua/kuia to enjoy physical movement, other provisions based on local whānau needs/wants.
- Reconnecting ahi teretere, ahi matao to culture through play, active recreation and sport with the support of ahi kaa. Seeing themselves as Māori first - 'Are you a Māori sportsperson or do you play sport and happen to be Māori?'

**"If you can afford for your whānau to play sports there are a lot of opportunities. If you cannot afford petrol to get to sport, equipment or fees, then whānau cannot participate in sport." - survey respondent**

**"Think outside the box and be more inclusive in relation to seeing culture, recreation, leisure and sport as part of a bigger thing than merely being a thing." - survey respondent**



## Current Provision - Ngā whai wahitanga

### Overview

- There are a large number of play, active recreation and sport facilities in the region. However, many are ageing and poorly maintained.
- There is a clear need to apply a hierarchy approach to facilities to cater to different needs, without over-provision of one level of facility.
- There is also a need to optimise existing facilities, making the most of what Te Tai Tokerau currently has before investing in new facilities unless clear gaps have been identified.
- Hubbing is highly desirable but not at the expense of a base level of local provision and delivery to ensure appropriate access for small communities, allowing everyone to participate.
- A base level of service is desired - provision of facilities that support local community involvement at an informal, social/casual and recreational level.
- Partnerships, repurposing and rationalisation of facilities is needed e.g. clubrooms.
- There are a number of facility projects that are currently underway in the region, these are an important part of the ongoing work towards resolving some of the facility gaps identified in this strategy.

**“We have facilities but youth are looking for something to do. The part that is missing is the conduit - parents, volunteers” - stakeholder**

**“Sports seem to be siloed so would be economical (to) see more multisport facilities.” – survey respondent**



### Key Facility gaps

- Indoor and outdoor courts.
- Aquatic facilities – multi-generational i.e. warmer water for kaumatua, kuia, play water and swimming lessons
- Lighting – fields and outdoor courts to support training and night games (alternative delivery scenarios).
- Accessible facilities (catering effectively to disability access also suits older people, young people etc).
- Quality playing and training facilities surfaces (fields and courts) – quality (drainage, irrigation, lighting, storage, changing rooms).
- Spectator facilities – shade, shelter, seating.
- Water provision – water supply issues, particularly in the Far North can impact sport and active recreation. There is also a lack of water provision at many sport and active recreation facilities across the region, such as hoses/taps for water-based sports for washing boats.
- Youth spaces (facilities that are appealing to youth and easy for them to access).
- Active recreation facilities to support informal, social/casual use – skateparks, multiuse local courts, linked up cycleways, walkways, footpaths.
- Mara Hupara (traditional playgrounds).

### Programme gaps

- Volunteer training and education including coaching, officials' roles and succession planning to transfer knowledge from outgoing to new volunteers.
- More water safety education, including in natural settings (beach, ocean, rivers) and more learn to swim opportunities (including for adults).
- More “event’s” people can participate in, in their own time. For example, parkrun, app based or online ‘competition’.
- More play “events” (activation of existing spaces for play) – provided by local communities.

## Vision - A mātou moemoea

Keeping Te Tai Tokerau moving in partnership, using our tikanga (way of doing things) to guide how we act now and in the future.

## Our Principles and Values - A mātou whakapono

### He Whakaputanga o te Rangatiratanga o Nu Tirene me Te Tiriti o Waitangi

We acknowledge the mana of the articles of He Whakaputanga and Te Tiriti o Waitangi and in doing so acknowledge Māori as mana whenua.

### Poipoia te kakano kia puawai

Young people (mokopuna, tamariki and rangatahi) will be our primary focus. We will focus on fun and encourage young people to not specialise too early. We acknowledge that childhood sporting success is not a reliable predictor of adult athlete success. We value the importance of play and the right of young people to have varied, self-directed, playful experiences.

### Whakawhanaungatanga

We will use play, active recreation and sport to support the mahi of other sectors (through strategic partnerships). Working together - using our local connections, knowledge and input to create a better, more active future throughout Te Tai Tokerau.

### Oranga Taiao, Oranga Tāngata

We actively encourage the connection of people to place. It is important that play, active recreation and sport supports holistic wellbeing. Our spaces and places will be increasingly used for a wide range of play, active recreation and sport and community outcomes. We will empower individual communities to create participation initiatives specifically suited to their place and their people.



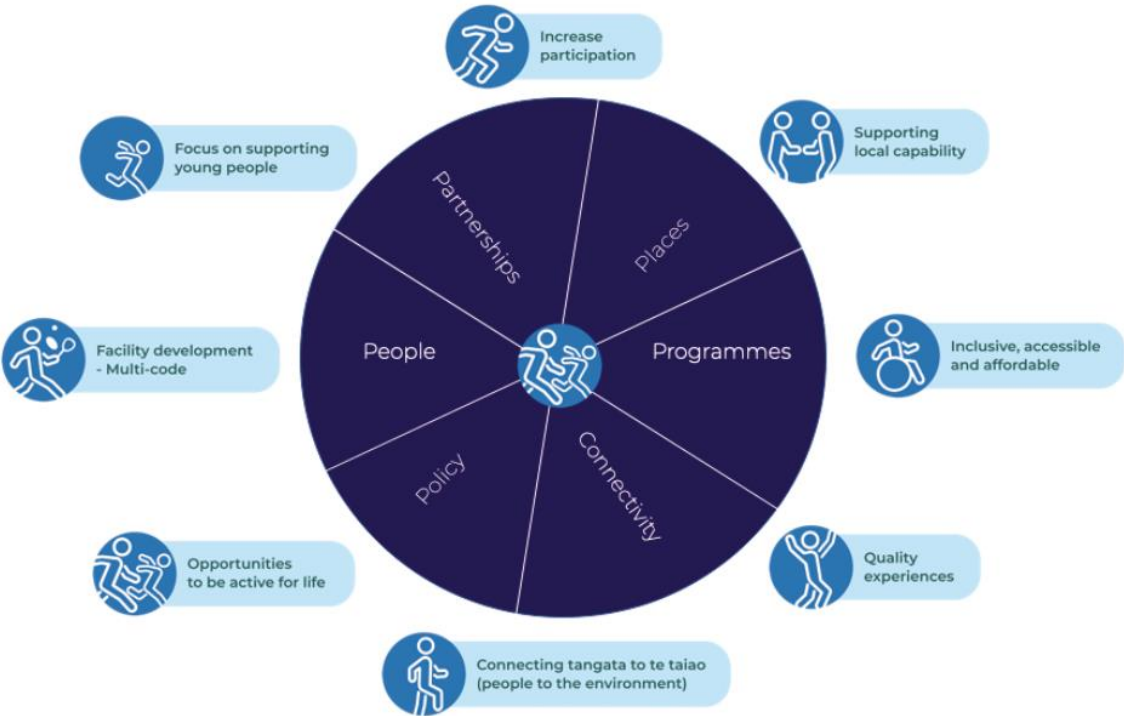
## Strategic Outcomes - Ngā putanga rautaki

From engagement with individuals, whanau and organisations across the sector and region, there were different views expressed, but also many consistent themes regarding what the key strategic outcomes and areas of future focus should be in the region. The key strategic outcomes are captured in these symbols.



### Strategic Pillars - Ngā pou

To increase participation across play, active recreation and sport within Te Tai Tokerau a multi-faceted approach is required. This strategy identifies six key pillars that provide the framework to the recommended programme of work that will support the region to achieve the desired strategic outcomes identified in this strategy.



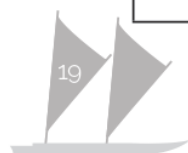


## Pillars - Ngā pou

| Partnerships - Mana Orite   |  |                                      |                                      |  |
|---|--|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| Objectives  | Priorities:  | Facilitator(s)                       | Supporters                           | Timeframe<br>Short - 1-3 years<br>Medium 4-6<br>Long 7 plus: |
| Strengthen partnerships with Māori.   | Work with whānau, hapū, Marae and Iwi to partner and support play, active recreation and sport within their settings.  | Sport Northland, Māori Organisations | NSC, Play Coalition                  | Ongoing  |
| Play, active recreation and sport is used as a tool to deliver wider whānau and community benefits. | Use the Northland Intersectoral Forum to seek better alignment with other sectors, linking play, active recreation and sport to other community benefits.  | Sport Northland                      | Northland Intersectoral Forum        | Ongoing  |
| Further develop partnerships within the play, active recreation and sport sector.                   | Establish a Kōkiri Strategy Working Group (KSWG) to oversee the implementation and regular reviews of this strategy. Ensure the group membership includes all key partners to ensure diverse perspectives are represented.   | Sport Northland                      | Councils, NSC, iwi                   | Ongoing  |
|   | Provide an opportunity for active recreation organisations to come together to improve regional planning and advocacy for these activities. Consider including active recreation as a stream within the sports coalition alongside field sports, water and court sports. | Sport Northland                      | NSC                                  | Short  |
|   | Consider expanding the Northland Sports Coalition as a forum to include active recreation groups. Work is already occurring to expand it to provide health and youth perspectives.   | NSC                                  | Active Recreation Groups             | Medium   |
|   | Develop a Te Tai Tokerau Play Coalition, (or similar group), to progress regional improvements in the planning and provision of play opportunities.  | Sport Northland                      | District Councils, providers of play | Short  |
|   | Develop more RSO partnerships to help improve access to and sharing of support services (e.g. Admin, Finance, IT, Marketing, Legal, HR.).  | NSC                                  | RSOs, Sport Northland                | Medium   |

| Partnerships - Mana Orite        |   |   |   |  |
|----------------------------------|---|---|---|--|
| Objectives                       | Priorities:   | Facilitator(s)                                  | Supporters  | Timeframe<br>Short = 1-3 years<br>Medium 4-6<br>Long 7 plus: |
| Partnerships with other sectors. | Work with mana whenua (hapū and iwi) and the Department of Conservation (DoC) to identify jointly beneficial partnerships delivering environmental and recreational outcomes.   | Sport Northland<br>Mana whenua                  | DoC, District Councils  | Short  |
|                                  | Work closely with health agencies including Mahitahi Hauora, and Māori Health providers around the rohe, to identify jointly beneficial partnerships delivering health and recreational participation benefits to Te Tai Tokerau communities.   | Sport Northland,                                | Health Agencies, District Councils                                  | Short  |
|                                  | Strengthen the relationship with regional Ministry of Education representatives, state schools and state-integrated schools in the region to ensure early awareness of school facility development plans and advocate for community access partnerships.  | Sport Northland                                 | Sport NZ, MoE, state schools and state-integrated schools           | Short  |
|                                  | Improving community access to state school and state-integrated school facilities that provide mutually beneficial outcomes, avoid duplication of effort and investment, contribute to providing a District wide network of spaces and places for increased participation.<br>Where community access to existing state school and state-integrated school facilities or the joint development or upgrading of new facilities will meet a demonstrated need then the parties (MoE, Sport Northland and the relevant District Council) will work collaboratively to support the development of specific partnership agreements. This may include agreements to support operations and maintenance of facilities in return for community access. | MoE, Sport Northland, relevant District Council | State schools and state-integrated schools                          | Ongoing  |
|                                  | Develop a pilot programme of school-club partnerships with a focus on reducing drop-off from school to club sport. Ensure that young people are part of the planning and development process.   | NSC   | Sport Northland, RSOs   | Medium   |
|                                  | Investigate partnership opportunities to improve sharing of existing transport resources in the region to support young people participating.   | NSC   | Sport Northland   | Short  |
|                                  | Advocate to Waka Kotahi (NZTA) for improved pathways (for walking and cycling) to provide safer recreation opportunities.   | Sport Northland, Councils                       | Walking & Cycling Strategy Group, Northland Transportation Alliance | Ongoing  |

| People - Tāngata whāiora              |   |                   |   |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|-------------------|---|---|
| Objectives                            | Priorities  | Facilitator(s)    | Supporters  | Timeframe:<br>Short = 1-3 years<br>Medium 4-6<br>Long 7 plus: |
| Partnership approach.                 | Build sector understanding of a partnership approach; Tangata Tiriti and Tangata whenua and the roles of the two to ensure cohesiveness and positive outcomes for all,  | KSWG, Mana whenua | Sector  | Ongoing   |
| Re-ignited volunteers.                | Seek advice and a potential partnership with marae and runanga to understand a whānau approach to volunteering, as well as Volunteering Northland to develop a volunteer strategy and potentially a dedicated Volunteer Coordinator role within Sport Northland. This will help build capacity and capability in volunteers in all areas of play, active recreation and sport.  | Sport Northland   | NSC, Play Coalition, Regional Organisations                       | Short   |
|                                       | Work with appropriate partners to investigate establishment of a mentoring system for getting young people involved in volunteer enabler roles within play, active recreation and sport. Consider needs and opportunities for young people in alternative education as part of this.  | Sport Northland   | MSD, marae, hapū, iwi, state schools and state-integrated schools | Medium  |
| Strong, supported Coaching Network.   | Many National Sports Organisations (NSOs) are developing coaching strategies. Work with local groups to provide effective, local implementation.  | RSOs              | Clubs, hapū, whānau, state schools and state-integrated schools   | Short   |
| Support and develop local capability. | Work with local community level groups to develop their individual and organisational capability to deliver more effectively.   | Sport Northland   | Regional Organisations  | Ongoing   |
|                                       | Increase provision of training and development opportunities for all whānau, including the paid and volunteer workforce across Te Tai Tokerau.  | Sport Northland   | NSC, Regional Organisations                                       | Short   |
|                                       | Where opportunities arise, work with existing and new community organisations and mana whenua to consider more local community involvement in the maintenance and activations of parks. This type of approach could increase feelings of community ownership and use of public parks. Support with minimising compliance barriers for community organisations (e.g. health and safety paperwork, public liability insurance) may be required. | District Councils | DoC   | Ongoing   |



| People - Tāngata whaiora                 |  |                 |                                      |   |
|--|--|-----------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| Objectives                               | Priorities   | Facilitator(s)  | Supporters                           | Timeframe:<br>Short = 1-3 years<br>Medium 4-6<br>Long 7 plus: |
| Strong, successful sector organisations. | Continue to implement a programme of governance training and development initiatives for active recreation and sport governance boards.  | NSC             | Sport Northland                      | Ongoing   |
|  | Work with iwi, hapū and marae to understand a Māori approach to governance and operations and develop a strategy for implementation.   | Sport Northland | Iwi, hapū, marae                     | Medium  |
|  | Investigate options to provide increased operational support to sport and active recreation groups across the region. This could include consideration of shared staffing resource across multiple organisations.                        | NSC             | Sport Northland                      | Short   |
|  | Ensure existing and planned multi-sport hubs receive targeted governance and operational management training and support. This may include advice around effective asset management planning.  | Sport Northland | District Councils                    | Ongoing   |
|  | Investigate development of a joint governance board initiative with interested RSO organisations. The governance skills and requirements are very similar across different codes so one board may be able to oversee more than one code. | NSC             | Sport Northland, RSOs                | Long  |
| Build capacity in key roles.             | That resources are provided to support a full time Spaces and Places Lead role to increase focus on work in this area and support the implementation of District Spaces and Places plans.  | Sport Northland | Sport NZ, District Councils, funders | Short   |
|  | That resources are provided to support a Play Systems Lead role to advocate for and support regional improvements in play. This will include supporting each district to develop integrated play strategies.                             | Sport Northland | Sport NZ                             | Short   |



| Connectivity - Whanaungatanga                   |  |  |   |   |
|---|--|--|---|---|
| Objectives                                      | Priorities   | Facilitator(s)                                     | Supporters  | Timeframe:<br>Short = 1-3 years<br>Medium 4-6<br>Long 7 plus: |
| Promotion to encourage increased participation. | Develop a range of joint promotions across play, active recreation and sport participation opportunities. This should include promoting the health and wellbeing benefits of these participation opportunities.  | NSC, Play Coalition, Regional Organisations        | Sport Northland                                     | Short   |
|   | Explore the development of a social media initiative to help encourage play, active recreation and sport participation through the use of local heroes and role-models to inspire our community to be active.  | KSWG, Sport Northland                              | NSC, Play Coalition, Regional Organisations         | Medium  |
|   | Continue the 'media promotion for sport' initiative whereby local play, active recreation and sport stories are provided to media outlets to increase the profile of local sport and activity.   | NSC, RSOs  | Media organisations                                 | Ongoing   |
| Better utilisation of technology.               | Use online delivery mechanisms to increase local participation opportunities and decrease the negative impacts travel has on participation. This may include 'online events' that people can participate in at times that suit them.   | Deliverers e.g. active recreation, event providers |   | Ongoing   |
|   | Investigate development of a centralised information hub promoting play, active recreation and sport throughout the region to make it easy for people to find opportunities to be active. This may involve building on an existing system to link more effectively to multiple organisations' websites and sources of information. Ideally this would also link to information on health and wellbeing programmes. | KSWG   | Sport Northland, Councils, NSC, RSOs, iwi providers | Long  |



| Connectivity - Whanaungatanga |   |                      |   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|----------------------|---|---|
| Objectives                    | Priorities  | Facilitator(s)       | Supporters                                    | Timeframe:<br>Short = 1-3 years<br>Medium 4-6<br>Long 7 plus: |
| Strong leadership.            | Share and highlight local organisational good practise from a range of settings including iwi, marae, clubs and community to provide a variety of approaches to strong leadership in play, active recreation and sport  | Sport Northland, NSC | Councils, RSO's, sector                       | Ongoing   |
|                               | Share local and national good practice guidance for play and active recreation to support and enable spontaneous play, informal, recreational and social/casual participation. Use existing connections with Sport NZ and Recreation Aotearoa to help in this area. | Sport Northland      | Play Coalition, Sport NZ, Recreation Aotearoa | Medium  |
|                               | Work to increase the information flow and connection between regional groups (NSC and RSOs) and people involved in local, grass roots delivery.   | NSC                  | Regional organisations, local groups          | Short   |
|                               | Investigate options to help drive increased diversity across the sector in governance, management and delivery roles.   | KSWG                 | Sport Northland, NSC, Play Coalition          | Medium  |
|                               | Promote Te Whetu Rehua as a tool to develop understanding and approach to better fulfil Māori needs.  | Sport Northland      | Iwi, hapū                                     | Ongoing   |





| Programmes and Participation - Ngā whai wāhitanga          |  |                               |   |   |
|--|--|-------------------------------|---|---|
| Objectives   | Priorities   | Facilitator(s)                | Supporters  | Timeframe:<br>Short = 1-3 years<br>Medium 4-6<br>Long 7 plus: |
| Regional implementation of the Balance is Better approach. | Work with RSOs to get them on board with the philosophy of Balance is Better. Then work to progressively deliver Balance is Better initiatives across the region.                                      | Sport Northland, NSC          | RSOs, clubs   | Short   |
| Acknowledging connection between tangata and Te Taiao.     | Prioritise and support kaitiakitanga and similar kaupapa that focus on connection between tangata and Te Taiao. Link people to culture through the natural environment.                                | Sport Northland, hapū         |   | Short   |
| Culturally appropriate programmes.                         | Support whānau, hapū, iwi, marae to achieve their play, active recreation and sport outcomes and participation opportunities.  | KSWG                          | Sector  | Ongoing   |
|  | Work with whānau and hapū to develop programmes that focus on the development of cultural knowledge and practices to be implemented into physical activity settings beyond whānau and hapū.            | KSWG                          | Sector  | Short   |
|  | Te Whetu Rehua is the framework used to align with, build and measure cultural appropriateness   | Sport Northland               | Sector  | Ongoing   |
|  | Investigate the potential of mātauranga Māori to enhance the experience for participants (Māori and non-Māori).  | Sport Northland, hapū, whānau | Sector  | Medium  |
| Locally led, community driven programmes.                  | Continue to resource and enhance the Sport Northland Community Connector roles to empower whānau/hapū/hapori Māori and communities to co-decide and lead initiatives by local people for local people. | Sport Northland               | Whānau, hapū, hapori Māori and communities.         | Ongoing   |
|  | Support rangatahi to achieve their play, active recreation and sport outcomes and participation opportunities.   | Sport Northland               | Youth Organisations, RSOs, clubs, community groups. | Ongoing   |



| Programmes and Participation - Ngā whai wāhitanga |   |                                 |   |   |
|---|---|---------------------------------|---|---|
| Objectives  | Priorities  | Facilitator(s)                  | Supporters                                      | Timeframe:<br>Short = 1-3 years<br>Medium 4-6<br>Long 7 plus: |
| Quality opportunities for all.                    | Investigate the establishment of a participation incentive programme with membership fees and/or equipment sponsorship for people who need financial support to participate. This should have a specific focus on young people but could also cater to a broad range of people who need financial support, such as those with disabilities or different ethnic groups.  | NSC                             | Regional Investors Forum (RIF), Sport Northland | Short   |
|   | Investigate the establishment of a promising athlete (over 16 years) travel scholarship programme to support those who face financial challenges to travel at regional level for higher competition and training requirements. This would complement the Kauri Club grants which are focussed at national level.  | Sport Northland                 | Northland Sports Development Panel (NSTDP), RIF | Medium  |
|   | Support new initiatives offering fully inclusive participation opportunities across play, active recreation and sport. Ensure that appropriate experts are used to inform the development and implementation of these initiatives including hāpu, iwi, whānau, Parafed Northland, Special Olympics, Halberg and others including older adult and youth advisory groups. | NSC, Play Coalition             | RIF, Sport Northland, District Councils         | Ongoing   |
|   | Increase the ways that introductory water safety programmes are provided across the region. This should include exploring opportunities for vessel-based water education programmes that can be delivered through a partnership of water-based sport and active recreation groups.  | Sport Northland                 | NSC – water sports                              | Short   |
|   | Seek resourcing to increase the availability of learn to swim programmes across the region, including for adults.   | Sport Northland, Deliverers     | RIF, state schools and state-integrated schools | Medium  |
|   | Support tamariki to achieve their play, active recreation and sport outcomes and participation opportunities and recognise that time, place and permission is central to creating quality play opportunities and outcomes.  | Sport Northland, Play Coalition | District Councils, Local groups                 | Short   |
|   | RSOs build their own cultural capability and partnerships to work with clubs/community/whānau groups to increase support for Māori participation.   | RSOs                            | Local groups                                    | Ongoing   |



| Planning and Policy - Whakamahere me ngā kaupapa here         |  |                                      |                                    |   |
|---|--|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|
| Objectives  | Priorities   | Facilitator(s)                       | Supporters                         | Timeframe:<br>Short = 1-3 years<br>Medium 4-6<br>Long 7 plus: |
| Reflect the importance of Te Tiriti o Waitangi                | Ensure recognition of Te Tiriti o Waitangi articles and principles in all play, active recreation and sport policy that is reviewed and developed in future.   | Councils, NSC, RSOs, Sport Northland |                                    | Ongoing   |
| Policy criteria support the strategy vision and priorities    | Develop policy that encourages investment into multi-use sport and active recreation hub sites (over single use facilities where practical).   | Councils, Funders                    | Sport Northland                    | Medium  |
|   | RSOs investigate the relaxation of participation/membership and competition rules to increase flexibility of delivery and participation, particularly for small, rural communities.  | NSC, RSOs                            |                                    | Short   |
| Funding approaches support the strategy vision and priorities | Develop a Regional Investors Forum (RIF) to consider and agree principles to abide by when investing in play, active recreation and sport. This needs to consider ways to create greater certainty regarding operational funding.                      | Sport Northland, Funders             |                                    | Short   |
|   | Work with Councils and Sport NZ to review how the rural travel fund is working in Te Tai Tokerau, seeking ways to ensure the guidelines and process best support desired outcomes for young people.  | Sport Northland                      | Sport NZ, District Councils        | Short   |
| Increased diversity   | Develop recruitment policy for sector roles in both operations and governance that reflects and encourages diversity.  | Sport Northland, NSC, RSO's          |                                    | Short   |
| Supporting Te Taiao   | Undertake a project to identify key, regional sport and recreation assets that are at risk to climate change e.g. sea level rise. This will be important to support future planning as a planned withdrawal from some sites may be required in future. | KSWG, NRC                            | Sport Northland, District Councils | Long  |
|   | Investigate how the sector could reduce carbon emissions going forward.  | KSWG                                 | Sport Northland, NSC, RSOs         | Long  |



| Planning and Policy - Whakamahere me ngā kaupapa here |  |                                    |  |   |
|---|--|------------------------------------|--|---|
| Objectives  | Priorities   | Facilitator(s)                     | Supporters   | Timeframe:<br>Short = 1-3 years<br>Medium 4-6<br>Long 7 plus: |
| Locally accessible facilities and opportunities       | Facilitate the development of a Community and School Partnerships – Shared Use Policy. Such a policy will increase the use of school facilities for local community needs, supporting a hub and spoke approach to facility provision in the region.  | Sport Northland                    | Sport NZ, MoE, District Councils, state schools and state-integrated schools | Medium  |
|   | Establish local levels of service for multi-use, introductory level play, active recreation and sport facilities to ensure appropriate provision, considering different community needs within a District.   | District Councils, Sport Northland | Community, whānau  | Medium  |
|   | Ensure young people have access to a variety of play opportunities within their local environments (natural and built). Applying child friendly design and the philosophy that any space is a play space will increase opportunities for spontaneous play to occur. Take into consideration local mātauranga and whakapapa that can be incorporated into these play opportunities where appropriate. | District Councils iwi, hapū        | Play Coalition   | Medium  |
|   | Work with local communities, iwi, hapū and regional sport and active recreation groups to improve sport and activity specific facility planning, with a focus on partnerships, enhancing local facility access and maximising existing facilities through proactive maintenance plans.   | Sport Northland, RSO's             | Councils   | Short   |
|   | Support each District Council in the region to develop an integrated play strategy, with cross-council initiatives to improve access and use of public space for play. Ensure shade and shelter provision are considered in all planning processes.  | Sport Northland, Sport NZ          | District Councils Iwi/hapū   | Short   |
|   | Work with regional play, active recreation and sport organisations to update or develop accessibility policies to increase the focus on universal design, access and opportunities for those with disabilities.  | Parafed Northland                  | Sport Northland  | Medium  |
|   | Support Parafed Northland to develop an inventory of facilities that should be prioritised for investment to enhance physical accessibility through meeting universal access requirements.   | KSWG, Parafed Northland            | RIF, Sport Northland   | Short   |
|   | Investigate opportunities to improve how the Whangarei bus service supports young peoples' access to sport and active recreation hub sites through advocating for changed routes and hours of service.   | KSWG                               | NSC, NRC, Sport Northland  | Medium  |

## Spaces and Places - Ngā wāhi o Te Tai Tokerau

Spaces and places (facilities) work will use and consider the Sport NZ facility hierarchy and this strategies facility planning principles. This section provides direction on matters important to spaces and places across the region and facilities at the regional level of the facility hierarchy. District level plans provide direction at the sub-regional/district and local level of the facility hierarchy.

### Facility Planning Principles

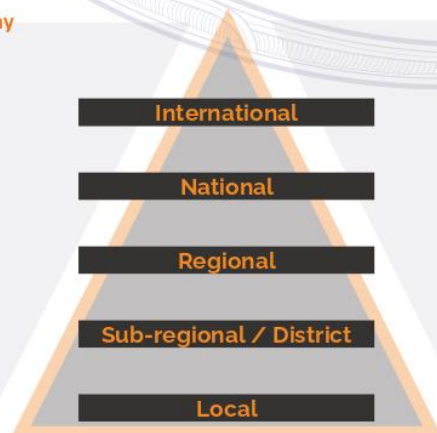
- Sustainability
- Partnerships and collaboration
- Meeting an identified need
- Multi-use
- Future proofed
- Inclusive, accessible and affordable
- Deliver wider community benefits
- Unique needs of Northland(ers)
- Optimised

Future work in this strategy area will also be informed by:

- Existing local and regional priority projects that are already underway such as Pohe island, Te Hiku and others.
- Whangarei Sport and Active Recreation Strategy
- Far North Spaces and Places Plan
- Kaipara Spaces and Places Plan

Overall, this strategy endorses and supports the implementation of the Whangarei Active Recreation and Sport Strategy which will be a key contributor to helping the regional strategy be successful.

### Facility Hierarchy



| Spaces & Places - Ngā wāhi o Te Tai Tokerau |  |  |   |   |
|---|--|--|---|---|
| Objectives                                  | Priorities   | Facilitator(s)                           | Supporters                                  | Timeframe:<br>Short = 1-3 years<br>Medium 4-6<br>Long 7 plus: |
| Culturally appropriate places and spaces.   | Enhance the connection between people and place through working with mana whenua (taking into consideration local mātauranga and whakapapa that can be incorporated into these spaces and places where appropriate).                               | District Councils, iwi, hapū, landowners | DoC   | Ongoing   |
|   | Ensure appropriate space and time is provided for taonga takāro (traditional Māori sports) such as ki-o-rahi and mahi a te rehia on parks and reserves.  | District Councils                        | Sport Northland, NSC                        | Short   |
|   | Where marae are considered the hub of the community, engage with and investigate ways in which funding and support can be provided to develop the spaces in order to provide participation opportunities within play, active recreation and sport. | KSWG, marae                              | Sport Northland, District Councils, funders | Ongoing   |
|   | Advocate for taking a waka hourua approach to facility development across the region. Ensuring a Māori voice from the beginning to the end.  | KSWG                                     | Sport Northland, NSC, Councils, funders     | Ongoing   |



| Spaces & Places - Ngā wāhi o Te Tai Tokerau                    |  |                       |  |   |
|--|--|-----------------------|--|---|
| Objectives   | Priorities   | Facilitator(s)        | Supporters   | Timeframe:<br>Short = 1-3 years<br>Medium 4-6<br>Long 7 plus: |
| A well planned network of spaces and places across the region. | Maximise existing facilities in the first instance, before building new. This will include the development of well-planned maintenance and renewal programmes.   | Facility owners, KSWG | Councils, Sport Northland, Regional Investors Forum, iwi, state schools and state-integrated schools | Ongoing   |
|  | Investigate expanding the criteria of the Northland Regional Councils, (NRC), Regional Sports Facility Rate to also provide support to play and active recreation facility projects. The outcome of the investigation to inform the 2024 LTP process.  | NRC                   | Sport Northland  | Short   |
|  | Actively support the development of multi-use sport and active recreation hubs as part of a hub and spoke approach to the network of facility provision across the region. It is important to ensure that regional and district hub, (competition,) facilities are supported with appropriate 'spoke', (training/junior play), facilities at local level.  | Sport Northland, NSC  | Councils, RSOs   | Ongoing   |
|  | Develop a regional aquatic facilities plan that considers provision of warmer water facilities, learn to swim (all ages), competitive swimming and aquatic sport needs across the region. This work will replace or align with the proposed Whangarei District Aquatic Facilities Plan. Focus should be given to maximising use and access to existing facilities through partnerships and upgrades/re-developments to ensure facilities are fit-for purpose for an aging population. Priority should be given to increasing local access rather than developing an additional 50m pool in the region. | KSWG                  | Sport Northland, Councils, NSC, RSOs, iwi, state schools and state-integrated schools                | Short   |





| Spaces & Places - Ngā wāhi o Te Tai Tokerau                    |   |                     |                                      |   |
|--|---|---------------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| Objectives   | Priorities  | Facilitator(s)      | Supporters                           | Timeframe:<br>Short - 1-3 years<br>Medium 4-6<br>Long 7 plus: |
| A well planned network of spaces and places across the region. | Develop a regional courts plan to ensure appropriate provision and use of indoor and outdoor courts throughout the region. This work will replace or align with the proposed Whangarei District Courts Plan and needs to consider the balance between outdoor and indoor court provision, local and casual access needs and playing surface quality. The plan will need to consider maximising partnerships with state schools and state-integrated schools and the use of multiuse courts, development of covers and lights to enhance usability of existing outdoor courts. | KSWG                | Sport Northland, Councils, RSOs, iwi | Short   |
|  | Ensure existing key regional, national and international hierarchy facilities have asset management plans in place and are maintained in accordance with the plans.   | KSWG                | Asset owners                         | Ongoing   |
|  | Investigate opportunities to enhance existing facilities to increase use through investment in lighting and playing surface improvements.   | Asset owners, Clubs | RIF, Councils, Sport Northland, NSC  | Short   |
|  | Prioritise investment into fit-for-purpose support amenities at sport and active recreation hub sites to enhance the participant and spectator experience (toilets, change rooms, shade, shelter, car parking). This includes provision of drinking and wash down water to support water based sport, active recreation and play needs at key access points.  | Asset owners        | RIF, Councils, Sport Northland, NSC  | Medium  |



| Spaces & Places - Ngā wāhi o Te Tai Tokerau                   |   |                   |   |   |
|---|---|-------------------|---|---|
| Objectives  | Priorities  | Facilitator(s)    | Supporters                              | Timeframe:<br>Short - 1-3 years<br>Medium 4-6<br>Long 7 plus: |
| Support the implementation of District Spaces & Places Plans. | Work with Councils to implement Facility Navigator roles across the region, to assist local communities to work with Councils on facility development and enhancement projects.   | Sport Northland   | District Councils                       | Short   |
|   | Ensure regular reviews are undertaken of District Level Spaces & Places Plans/Strategies in line with LTP timeframes.   | KSWG              | Sport Northland, Councils               | Ongoing   |
| Locally accessible opportunities and facilities.              | Ensure that all districts in the region provide and promote the use of sites with a diverse range of play opportunities, including imaginative play and nature play. Young people should have access to both built environments and natural spaces for play.  | KSWG              | District Councils, Sport Northland      | Short   |
|   | Leverage investment opportunities to support local community organisations and volunteers to activate play spaces, increasing the time, place and permission for play to occur. This could include local play trails, play on the way initiatives and regional or district mobile play equipment provision. | Play Coalition    | Sport Northland, RIF, District Councils | Short   |
|   | Investigate provision of more youth-friendly spaces that cater to informal and casual play, active recreation and sport alongside other desirable youth focussed facilities and services.   | District Councils | Youth organisations                     | Medium  |



## Regional Priority Facility Projects

This section presents the specific facility projects that are considered to be regionally significant, short term priorities in Te Tai Tokerau. The full strategy reference document, the 2020 Whangarei Active Recreation and Sport Strategy, 2021 Kaipara Spaces and Places Plan and 2021 Far North Spaces and Places Plan contain more detail on sub-regional/district and local level facility projects.

These recommendations assume the completion of the Pohe Island Rugby Development project that is currently nearing completion, and that no further funding priority or direction is required for that project.

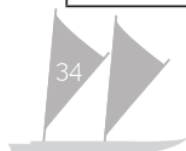
| Facility/Activity                 | Recommendation:   | Lead: | Support:                                  | Timeframe:<br>Short - 1-3 years<br>Medium 4-6<br>Long 7 plus: |
|-----------------------------------|---|-------|---|---|
| <b>Regional Facility Planning</b> |   |       |   |   |
| Collective prioritisation process | Use the Kōkiri Strategy Working Group (KSWG) along with other parties as required, to regularly review, prioritise and reprioritise facility specific projects. This will allow the prioritisation to remain current as individual projects progress through planning and construction phases at different rates. | KSWG  | Sport Northland, Councils, NSC, RSOs, iwi | Ongoing   |
| Courts and Aquatics               | Complete regional planning for the provision of court space and aquatic facilities as a high priority to inform future work. (See the Spaces and Places pillar for more detail on these projects).  | KSWG  | Sport Northland, Councils, NSC, RSOs, iwi | Short   |





| Facility/Activity         | Recommendation:   | Lead:   | Support:                            | Timeframe:<br>Short = 1-3 years<br>Medium 4-6<br>Long 7 plus: |
|---------------------------|---|---|-------------------------------------|---|
| <b>Far North</b>          |   |   |                                     |   |
| Te Hiku                   | Support the completion of this major multi-sport hub project that is due to commence construction. This will provide a key sub-regional/district asset. Through the final detailed design and development phase, or future project stages, ensure that all ages and abilities (including youth) are provided for in the aquatic area through the provision of hydrotherapy space, learn to swim and general water space (including play features). This may require future-proofing considerations in the design phase to allow for future expansion or change if required. | Te Hiku Sports Inc.                             | Sport Northland, FNDC, NRC, funders | Short   |
| Bay of Islands Sports Hub | Support the staged development of this new, multi-sport hub site which will become an important sub-regional sport, active recreation and play asset. Completion of stage one is the initial priority and will result in the development of playing fields (with lighting), car parking and an amenity block to support football and cricket. It is important to ensure that casual and informal play opportunities are also considered at all stages of site planning. (See Strategy Reference Document and 2021 Far North Spaces and Places Plan regarding later stages). | FNDC  | Sport Northland, RIF                | Short   |
| Sportsville Kaikohe       | Support the completion of this important sub-regional level facility for the mid-North area. There is a strong need for provision of additional court space in the region. The indoor court component of this site development is an initial high priority and should be planned to cater for local and sub-regional needs in the first instance. Catering for wider regional needs should be informed by the outcomes of the regional courts plan. (See 2021 Far North Spaces and Places Plan regarding later stages).   | Sportsville Kaikohe, FNDC                       | Sport Northland, RIF                | Short   |
| Kerikeri Gymnastics Club  | Complete a needs assessment and feasibility study for the development of a fit-for-purpose gymnastics facility to replace the current Kerikeri Gymnastics facility which is not meeting needs. Note: Gymnastics NZ 2017 Gymsports National Facilities Strategy identifies that Northland requires a sub-regional hub gymsports facility in Kerikeri.  | Kerikeri Gymnastics Club, funders               | Sport Northland, FNDC               | Short   |
| Kerikeri Squash Club      | Progress the project to relocate and rebuild the Kerikeri Squash Club. The lack of squash facilities in Kerikeri is impacting on facility access for squash across the wider region (not just Kerikeri based players). This facility should be focussed on regional level, including consideration of providing a purpose-built doubles court if sufficient demand exists. It is important to ensure the facility is future proofed to allow for ongoing population growth in the area.   | Kerikeri Squash Club, Squash Northland, funders | Sport Northland, FNDC               | Short   |

| Facility/Activity                                  | Recommendation:  | Lead:                               | Support:                   | Timeframe:<br>Short - 1-3 years<br>Medium 4-6<br>Long 7 plus: |
|--|--|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|---|
| <b>Whangarei</b>                                   |  |                                     |                            |   |
| Bike – Pohe Island                                 | Support the completion of this facility that is currently under construction. It will provide a key regional facility. Ensure that accessibility needs for disabled participants, tamariki and older adults are considered in the final development and programming of the facility.   | Bike Northland, WDC                 | Sport Northland, RIF       | Short   |
| Marine Activities - Pohe Island                    | Implement the master plan for Pohe Island Marine Activities. (See 2020 Whangarei Active Recreation and Sport Strategy recommendation 23 for more detail). This is endorsed as a high priority as access and support facilities for water sports are a key consideration regionally.  | WDC, water-based sports             | Sport Northland, RIF       | Short   |
| Football - Northland Football Hub                  | Subject to the outcome of needs and feasibility assessments, progress the proposed 'Home of Football' development at Tikipunga Sports Park to cater for the regional needs for player, coach and referee development and provide the base for Northern Football Federation and Northland Football. Initial priority should be given to field and lighting upgrades and support amenities (clubroom, changing room and car park upgrades). See 2020 Whangarei Active Recreation and Sport Strategy recommendation 31 for more detail.   | Northern Football, WDC              | Sport Northland, RIF       | Short   |
| Rugby League                                       | In line with the 2020 Whangarei Active Recreation and Sport Strategy (recommendation 46) implement the Otaika Sports Ground development plan, including the sale or lease of Jubilee Park with proceeds being used for the development of the 'home' of rugby league at Otaika Sports Ground. The facilities at Otaika Sports Ground are crucial for rugby league regionally. Further enhancement to these facilities is important. Otaika will also need to be supported by increased local level provision and access for rugby league across the wider region, particularly access to playing fields with quality lighting. | WDC, Northland Rugby League         | Sport Northland, RIF       | Short   |
| Netball  | The Whangarei Netball courts project, to install covers and lighting at Kensington courts, can/should proceed without the need for the regional courts plan to be completed, as these are key enhancements to maximise the use of existing assets to help the courts shortfall in the short term.  | Whangarei Netball, Netball Northern | Sport Northland, RIF, WDC  | Short   |
| Ruakaka Recreation Centre (Indoor Sports Facility) | Support the new indoor court facility in Ruakaka as a way to increase indoor court capacity in the region. This facility will become the regional base for volleyball in Northland. This project will provide increased indoor court access for volleyball along with outdoor, sand-based 'beach' volleyball courts adjacent to the indoor facility to enable the provision and promotion of different formats of the game. This facility will also serve as an important base for both Basketball and Netball along with other indoor court codes.  | Ruakaka Group, Volleyball Northland | Sport Northland, RSOs, RIF | Short   |



| Facility/Activity   | Recommendation:  | Lead:                | Support:   | Timeframe:<br>Short = 1-3 years<br>Medium 4-6<br>Long 7 plus: |
|---|--|----------------------|--|---|
| <b>Kaipara</b>  |  |                      |  |   |
| Pioneer Park, Northern Wairoa Memorial Park and Sportsville Dargaville Precinct | Joint planning is required regarding future developments at these sites to ensure synergies and reduce any duplication across the wider precinct area. Undertake a joint planning project to consider opportunities to enhance the provision and standard of sports field lighting to allow for multiple codes (football, rugby league, rugby) to use for training and night games. Ensure any initiative by Sportsville Dargaville to provide a lit, multi-use turf area is considered as part of this planning.  | KDC                  | Kauri Coast Recreation Society (KCRS), Northern Wairoa Rugby Sub Union | Short   |
| Sportsville Dargaville  | Undertake a detailed options and feasibility assessment for a multi-use turf installation in Dargaville. The replacement of the existing turf at Dargaville High School needs to be one of the options considered. Subject to the outcome of this assessment ensure that the proposed multi-use turf is primarily suitable for hockey, whilst also providing a resource to support other codes, particularly for training needs. The specifications need to cater for adult hockey (training) and junior hockey training and games. Ideally the turf will meet full-sized hockey specifications (1/2 turf at a minimum) to make it suitable for a wide range of other uses and be lit to the appropriate standards to support training for multiple codes. | KDC, KCRS            | Sport Northland, Northland Hockey, RSOs                                | Short   |
| Kauri Coast Community Pool  | Maintain this as the key aquatic facility for the Kaipara District. Undertake an options assessment and feasibility study for upgrading the facility to meet the future needs of the community, focussing on catering for all ages and abilities. A priority consideration is options for extending the season and maximising use of the hydrotherapy / children's pool through covering these areas. Options for provision of some covered lane space could also be considered within this planning work. This should be done in conjunction with the Regional Aquatic Facility Plan as proposed in the regional strategy.  | Sport Northland, KDC | RIF  | Short   |



## Acknowledgements

This strategy was developed in a spirit of partnership, with input from a wide range of people and organisations across Te Tai Tokerau and New Zealand. Everyone who contributed had a real interest in making a difference for the people of Te Tai Tokerau, with a genuine desire for improvement across the play, active recreation and sport sector.

Our sincere gratitude goes to all individuals, rangatahi, whānau, clubs, community groups, schools and regional sports organisations that gave up their valuable time to complete surveys and attend workshops, hui and answer our questions. Your local knowledge and insight as participants and providers was invaluable, giving real meaning to the strategy. Ngā mih nui

Thanks to the Project Steering Group members for their wise guidance:

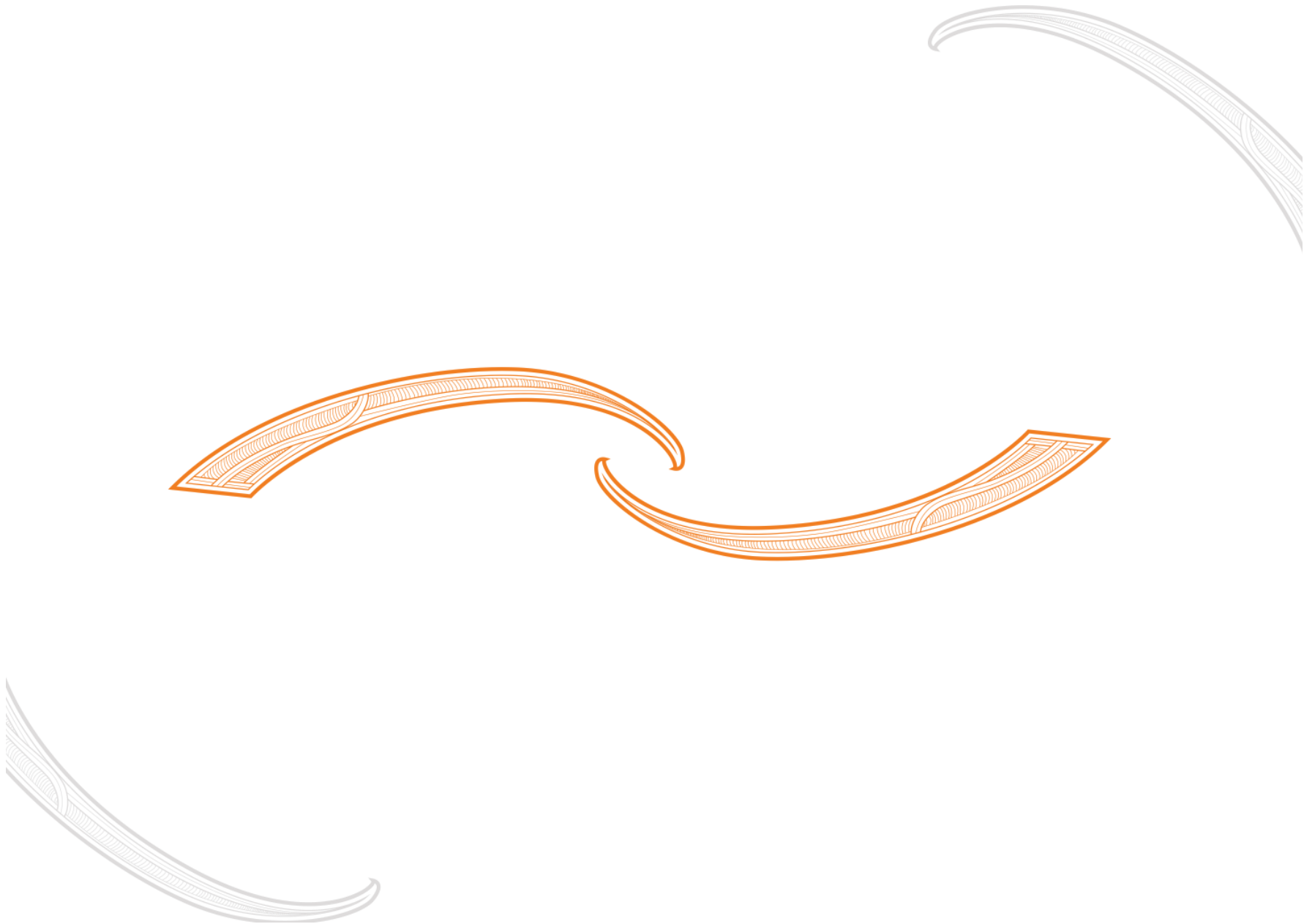
Brent Eastwood, Stu Middleton – Sport Northland  
 Phil Marsh, Josh Port - Northland Sports Coalition  
 Walter Wells – Te Kahu o Taonui  
 Deborah Harding – Māori advisory  
 Ana Mules – Far North District Council  
 Darlene Lang – Kaipara District Council  
 Sue Hodge – Whangarei District Council  
 Phil Heatley – Northland Regional Council  
 Jamie Delich – Sport New Zealand  
 Joey Yovich – Sport Northland (PSG Administrator)

Thanks to the Northland Sports Coalition (including executive members Sharon Carroll, Kura Heke, Trevor Reader).

Thanks to the whole team at Sport Northland, with special appreciation of Trina Henare, April Rawiri, Heather Deane, Roxanne Kelly, Lesley Wallace and Cheryl Smith.

Thanks also to Tui Marsh and Te Maapi Simich-Pene (Te Puni Kōkiri), Scott Mackenzie and Ellie Davidson (Sport NZ), Hamish Watson (KDC), Bernadete Aperahama (WDC), Emily Robinson, Nina Gobie (FNDC), Rana Poletti-Vette (Mahitahi Hauora), Ryan Donaldson (Whangarei Youth Space) and Carol Berghan and Tania Pere (Te Hiku Iwi Development Trust).







**6.2 SUBSOIL LEASE TO FNHL - THE STRAND, RUSSELL****File Number: A3243165****Author: Kaye Lethbridge, Property Legalisation Officer****Authoriser: Andy Finch, General Manager - Infrastructure and Asset Management****TAKE PŪRONGO / PURPOSE OF THE REPORT**

That Far North District Council grants consent to a new subsoil lease for the soil beneath The Strand, Russell.

**WHAKARĀPOPOTO MATUA / EXECUTIVE SUMMARY**

- Far North Holdings Limited (FNHL) requires a new subsoil lease of the soil beneath The Strand, Russell
- The current subsoil lease expires 30 June 2021
- The subsoil houses underground fuel tanks, pipes and pumps that service the Russell wharf
- The requested term for the new subsoil lease is 14 years

**TŪTOHUNGA / RECOMMENDATION**

**That the Bay of Islands-Whangaroa Community Board recommends:**

- a) **that the Far North District Council grants consent, pursuant to the Local Government Act 1974, to Far North Holdings Limited, for a new lease of the subsoil beneath The Strand, Russell; and that,**
  - i) **Term: 14 years**
  - ii) **Annual Rental: \$1.00 plus GST (if any)**
  - iii) **Expiry Date: 30 June 2035**
  - iv) **Renewal: Nil**
- b) **Far North Holdings Limited is responsible for ensuring that no parking is possible at the fill points location.**

**1) TĀHUHU KŌRERO / BACKGROUND**

The Bay of Islands-Whangaroa Community Board passed the following resolution at the 3<sup>rd</sup> June 2021 meeting:

**6.5 SUBSOIL LEASE TO FNHL - THE STRAND, RUSSELL**

Agenda item 7.5 document number A3187578, pages 103 - 105 refers.

**RESOLUTION 2021/64**

Moved: Member Lane Ayr

Seconded: Member Manuela Gmuer-Hornell

**That the Bay of Islands-Whangaroa Community Board recommends:**

**a) that the Far North District Council grants consent, pursuant to the Local Government Act 1974, to Far North Holdings Limited, for a new lease of the subsoil beneath The Strand, Russell, and that;**

- i) Term: 14 years**
- ii) Annual Rental: \$1.00 plus GST (if any)**
- iii) Expiry Date: 30 June 2035**
- iv) Renewal: Nil**

**b) Far North Holdings Limited is responsible for ensuring that no parking is possible at the fill points location.**

**CARRIED**

Against: Dave Hookway-Kopa

Abstained: Rachel Smith

Far North Holdings Limited (FNHL) has requested a new lease of the subsoil beneath The Strand, Russell. The subsoil lease is for underground fuel tanks, pipes and pumps servicing the Russell wharf.

The Far North District Council (Council) as landowner has the authority to enter into a subsoil lease pursuant to section 341 of the Local Government Act 1974 and Council has previously exercised this right with various oil companies for the installation of fuel tanks under the surface of legal roads.

In 1994 two (2) double skinned fibreglass fuel tanks, supplying diesel and petrol to the Russell wharf were installed by Mobil Oil, under the surface of The Strand, Russell. Council (as landowner) leased that portion of the subsoil to Mobil. Allied Petroleum Limited later acquired ownership of the underground fuel tanks, fuel lines and pumps.

Council (at that time) leased the Russell wharf to FNHL and to better facilitate the management of the oil company leases, transferred these to FNHL. To comply with the Local Government Act 1974, Council and FNHL entered into a subsoil lease (the head lease) for the subsoil housing the underground tanks etc. FNHL later issued a licence to Allied Petroleum for the underground tanks and associated assets servicing the Russell wharf.

The ownership of the Russell wharf has been transferred to FNHL however Council remains the owner of the road (The Strand) therefore a lease of the subsoil beneath the road is still necessary.

Allied Petroleum has a Northland Regional Council (NRC) resource consent (AUT.008057.01.03) to place, use and occupy space in the coastal marine area with a fuel facility. This consent expires 28 February 2035. (A copy is attached to this report)

The Allied Petroleum licence with FNHL terminates 30 June 2021 being concurrent with the termination of the subsoil lease between FNHL and Council. The 14-year term requested by FNHL will allow the proposed subsoil lease and the Allied Petroleum licence to expire at the same time as the NRC resource consent in 2035.

**2) MATAPAKI ME NGĀ KŌWHIRINGA / DISCUSSION AND OPTIONS**

Section 341 of the Local Government Act 1974 allows councils to lease the airspace above, or the subsoil beneath, the surface of a road. Councils do not have the power to lease the surface of a road, although section 341 does allow them to permit the temporary use of the road surface. There is no requirement for applications made under section 341 to be publicly notified.

Council is free to decide on the conditions of any lease granted under section 341, provided that the term of the lease does not exceed 35 years. A lease for a period of 35 years or more is deemed to be a subdivision under section 218 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

This proposal does not involve a change of ownership or control and is consistent with the historic use of the soil beneath The Strand, Russell. The fuel supply is a drawcard for Russell and feeds back into Russell businesses and its community.

Council's Roading Department has no issues with the subsoil lease as the area above the subsoil is mainly foot traffic use.

FNHL has informed Council that; (i) the underground fuel tanks are in good order and are checked every two (2) years (ii) the site meets the Health and Safety at Work Regulations and has WorkSafe Hazardous Area Compliance Approval, under which every site must have a stationary container and location test certified to store fuel (iii) the Allied Petroleum licence indemnifies both FNHL and Council.

### **Take Tūtohunga / Reason for the recommendation**

Russell is the only wharf in the wider Bay area that supplies petrol as well as diesel. This fuel supply is used by local, visiting and commercial vessels.

### **3) PĀNGA PŪTEA ME NGĀ WĀHANGA TAHUA / FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS AND BUDGETARY PROVISION**

There is no cost to Council as FNHL manages the subsoil lease on Council's behalf.

### **ĀPITIHINGA / ATTACHMENTS**

1. **Allied Resource Consent - A3193935** [↓](#) 
2. **FNHL leased area - A3193959** [↓](#) 



**Hōtaka Take Ōkawa / Compliance Schedule:**

Full consideration has been given to the provisions of the Local Government Act 2002 S77 in relation to decision making, in particular:

1. A Local authority must, in the course of the decision-making process,
  - a) Seek to identify all reasonably practicable options for the achievement of the objective of a decision; and
  - b) Assess the options in terms of their advantages and disadvantages; and
  - c) If any of the options identified under paragraph (a) involves a significant decision in relation to land or a body of water, take into account the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral land, water sites, waahi tapu, valued flora and fauna and other taonga.
2. This section is subject to Section 79 - Compliance with procedures in relation to decisions.

| <b>He Take Ōkawa / Compliance Requirement</b>   | <b>Aromatawai Kaimahi / Staff Assessment</b>  |
|---|---|
| State the level of significance (high or low) of the issue or proposal as determined by the <a href="#">Council's Significance and Engagement Policy</a>  | Low; historic use of the soil beneath the road.   |
| State the relevant Council policies (external or internal), legislation, and/or community outcomes (as stated in the LTP) that relate to this decision.   | Section 341 Local Government Act 1974 allows Council to lease the subsoil beneath a road.   |
| State whether this issue or proposal has a District wide relevance and, if not, the ways in which the appropriate Community Board's views have been sought.   | This report requests a recommendation from the Community Board.   |
| State the possible implications for Māori and how Māori have been provided with an opportunity to contribute to decision making if this decision is significant and relates to land and/or any body of water. | <p>Consultation – The Russell Wharf and Maritime Trust has a mandate from the Community to engage and inform development of the infrastructure around the foreshore and wharf at Russell. FNHL have consulted with the Trust regarding renewing a sub-soil lease for the tanks and they are supportive. Iwi are represented on the Trust via Chair of the Kororareka Marae Committee.</p> <p>FNHL has also consulted the BOI/Whangaroa Community Board regarding the sub-soil lease at its meeting in April 2021.</p> |
| Identify persons likely to be affected by or have an interest in the matter, and how you have given consideration to their views or preferences (for example – youth, the aged and those with disabilities).  | <p>Consultation – The Russell Wharf and Maritime Trust has a mandate from the Community to engage and inform development of the infrastructure around the foreshore and wharf at Russell. FNHL have consulted with the Trust regarding renewing a sub-soil lease for the tanks and they are supportive. Iwi are represented on the Trust via Chair of the Kororareka Marae Committee.</p> <p>FNHL has also consulted the BOI/Whangaroa Community Board regarding the sub-soil lease at its meeting in April 2021.</p> |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| State the financial implications and where budgetary provisions have been made to support this decision. | No financial implications for Council.                |
| Chief Financial Officer review.  | The Chief Financial Officer has reviewed this report. |



AUT.008057

.01

Replacement

Document Date: 20.11.2014

## Resource Consent

*Pursuant to the Resource Management Act 1991, the Northland Regional Council (hereinafter called "the Council") does hereby grant a Resource Consent to:*

**ALLIED PETROLEUM LIMITED, C/- PRECISION PLANNING, 9 ELWYN CLOSE, FLAT BUSH, AUCKLAND 2016**

To carry out the following activity at Russell Wharf, Bay of Islands or about location co-ordinates 1701960E 6097347N:

**AUT.008057.01.03** To place, use, and occupy space in the coastal marine area with a fuel facility.

*Note: All location co-ordinates in this document refer to Geodetic Datum 2000, New Zealand Transverse Mercator Projection.*

Subject to the following conditions:

- 1 This consent applies only to the fuel facilities located on the existing fuel wharf and the proposed fuel pontoon identified on Northland Regional Council Plan No. **3569A** attached.
- 2 The Consent Holder shall mark the fuel facility with the number **8057** in black lettering on a white background clearly displayed and in such a manner as to be clearly visible from land and sea.
- 3 The Consent Holder shall ensure that signage containing the information detailed in **Schedule 1**, is permanently displayed in a prominent position immediately adjacent to the fuel dispenser. The Consent Holder shall submit a copy of the proposed text of the sign to the Council, within 15 working days of the date of granting of this consent, for certification that it contains the information required by Schedule 1. The sign shall be erected no later than 20 working days after the Council's certification of the text.

**Advice Note:** *The sign is a permitted activity provided it meets the relevant standards in the Regional Coastal Plan. Otherwise a resource consent will be required for the sign.*

- 4 The Consent Holder shall keep the coastal marine area free of debris resulting from the Consent Holder's activities.



- 5 The Consent Holder shall maintain the structures covered by this consent in good order and repair.
- 6 The Consent Holder shall notify the Council in writing of the date alteration work to the fuel facility is intended to commence at least two weeks beforehand, and as soon as the work is completed.
- 7 The Consent Holder shall ensure that the fuel transfer system includes the following:
  - (a) A suitable drip tray shall be placed at the dispenser boom location. Appropriate oil absorbent material shall be securely placed in the drip tray;
  - (b) The drip tray shall be adequately maintained, including the regular replacement of the oil absorbent material;
  - (c) An automotive shut off valve shall be located at the fuel dispenser to ensure supply is stopped immediately if the fuel dispenser is damaged;
  - (d) A dispenser activated valve to isolate the pipeline from the storage tank when the dispenser is not being operated;
  - (e) An "in-line accumulator" to absorb the increased line pressure from thermal expansion to prevent the nozzle from dripping;
  - (f) Leak detectors that will operate to prevent the dispensing of fuel if there is significant pressure drop in the line;
  - (g) A breakaway coupling on the dispenser hose so that if a vessel moves away from the pontoon with the nozzle still in the vessel, the hose will break away rather than pulling away the fuel dispenser;
  - (h) Guards around the fuel dispenser; and
  - (i) An emergency stop button at the fuel dispenser, which, when operated, will instantly close off valves to stop any fuel being dispensed.
- 8 The Consent Holder shall, in consultation with the Harbourmaster for Northland, review the Tier One Oil Spill Contingency Plan by 31 May 2016 and thereafter at least every three years for the purpose of updating the Tier One Oil Spill Contingency Plan. Any changes to the Tier One Oil Spill Contingency Plan shall be subject to the approval of the Harbourmaster for Northland and shall be deemed to be the latest version for compliance purposes. The Consent Holder shall meet the reasonable costs of the reviews.
- 9 The Consent Holder shall, for the purposes of adequately monitoring the consent as required under Section 35 of the Act, on becoming aware of any contaminant associated with the Consent Holder's operations escaping otherwise than in conformity with this consent:
  - (a) Immediately take such action, or execute such work as may be necessary, to stop and/or contain such escape; and
  - (b) Immediately notify the Council by telephone of an escape of contaminant; and

- (c) Take all reasonable steps to remedy or mitigate any adverse effects on the environment resulting from the escape; and
- (d) Report to the Council in writing within one week on the cause of the escape of the contaminant and the steps taken or being taken to effectively control or prevent such escape.

In regard to telephone notification, during the Council's opening hours the Council's assigned monitoring officer for the consent shall be contacted. If that person cannot be spoken to directly, or it is outside of the Council's opening hours, then the Environmental Emergency Hotline shall be contacted.

**Advice Note:** *The Environmental Emergency Hotline is a 24 hour, seven day a week, service that is free to call on 0800 504 639.*

- 10 The Council may, in accordance with Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991, serve notice on the Consent Holder of its intention to review the conditions annually during the month of February to deal with any adverse effects on the environment that may arise from the exercise of the consent and which it is appropriate to deal with at a later stage.

The Consent Holder shall meet all reasonable costs of any such review.

**Advice Note:** *The Council may, in accordance with Section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991, serve notice on the Consent Holder of its intention to review the conditions any time for the following purposes:*

- (a) *To provide for compliance with rules relating to minimum standards of water quality in any regional plan that has been made operative since the commencement of the consent; or*
- (b) *To provide for compliance with any relevant national environmental standards that have been made; or*
- (c) *Where there are inaccuracies in the information made available with the application that materially influenced the decision on the application and where the effects of the exercise of consent are such that it is necessary to apply more appropriate conditions.*

- 11 Prior to the expiry or cancellation of this consent the Consent Holder shall remove all facilities and other materials and refuse associated with this consent from the consent area and shall restore the consent area to the satisfaction of the Council, unless an application for a replacement consent has been properly made beforehand.

- 12 This consent does not commence until 1 April 2015 (one day after the date of expiry of existing consent) unless consent AUT.008057.01.02 (CON20050805701) has first been surrendered, in which case this consent commences from the date the Consent Holder receives the Council's notice of acceptance of the surrender.



**Advice Note:** This is a new consent for the same activity authorised by consent AUT.008057.01.02 (CON20050805701), which expires on 31 March 2015, so it is in effect a replacement consent. This condition prevents both consents being exercised at the same time between the date of issue of the new consent and the expiry of the existing consent. The new consent may be exercised before the date specified but only after the existing consent has been surrendered.

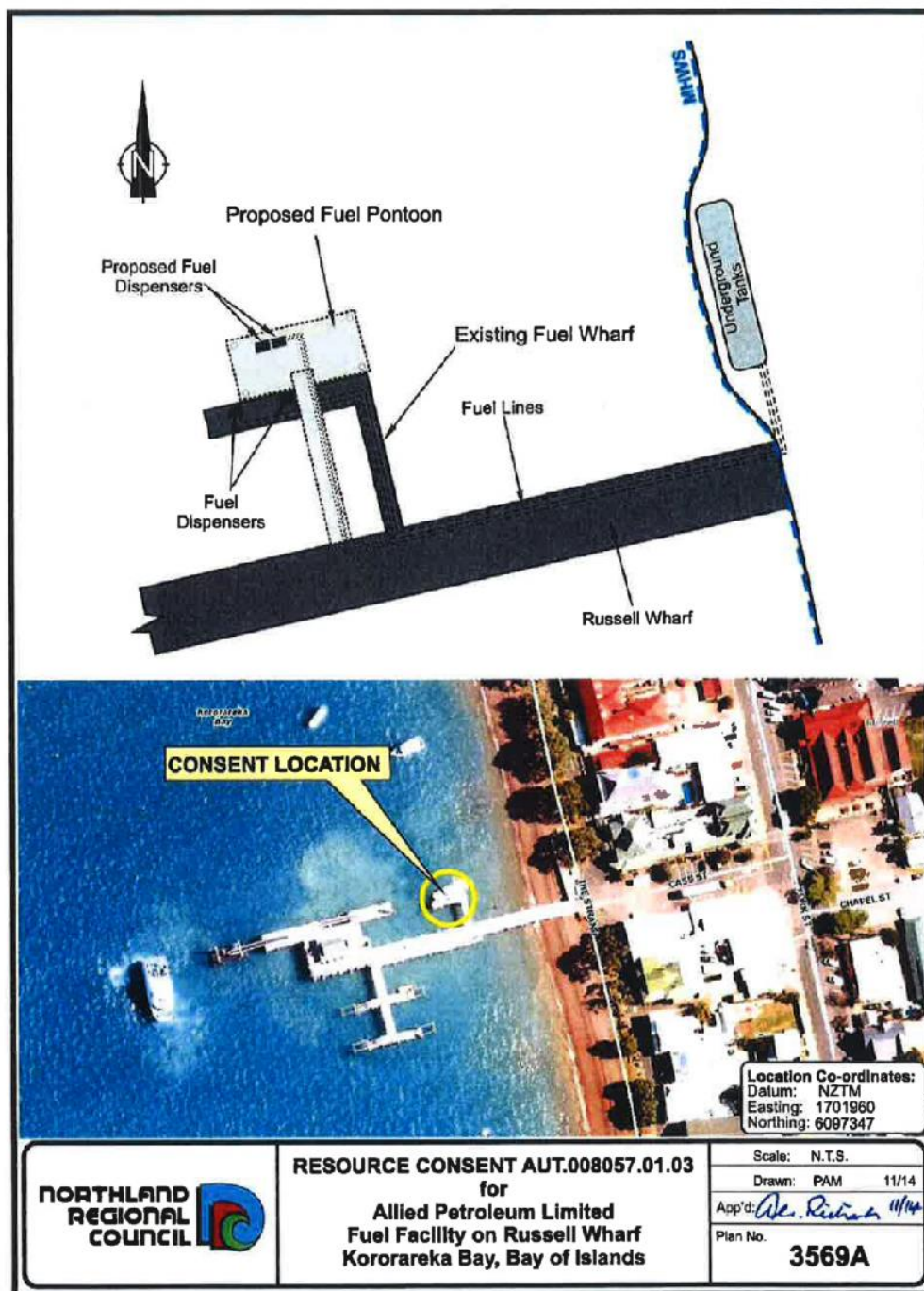
**EXPIRY DATE: 28 FEBRUARY 2035**

This consent is granted this Twentieth day of November 2014 under delegated authority from the Council by:

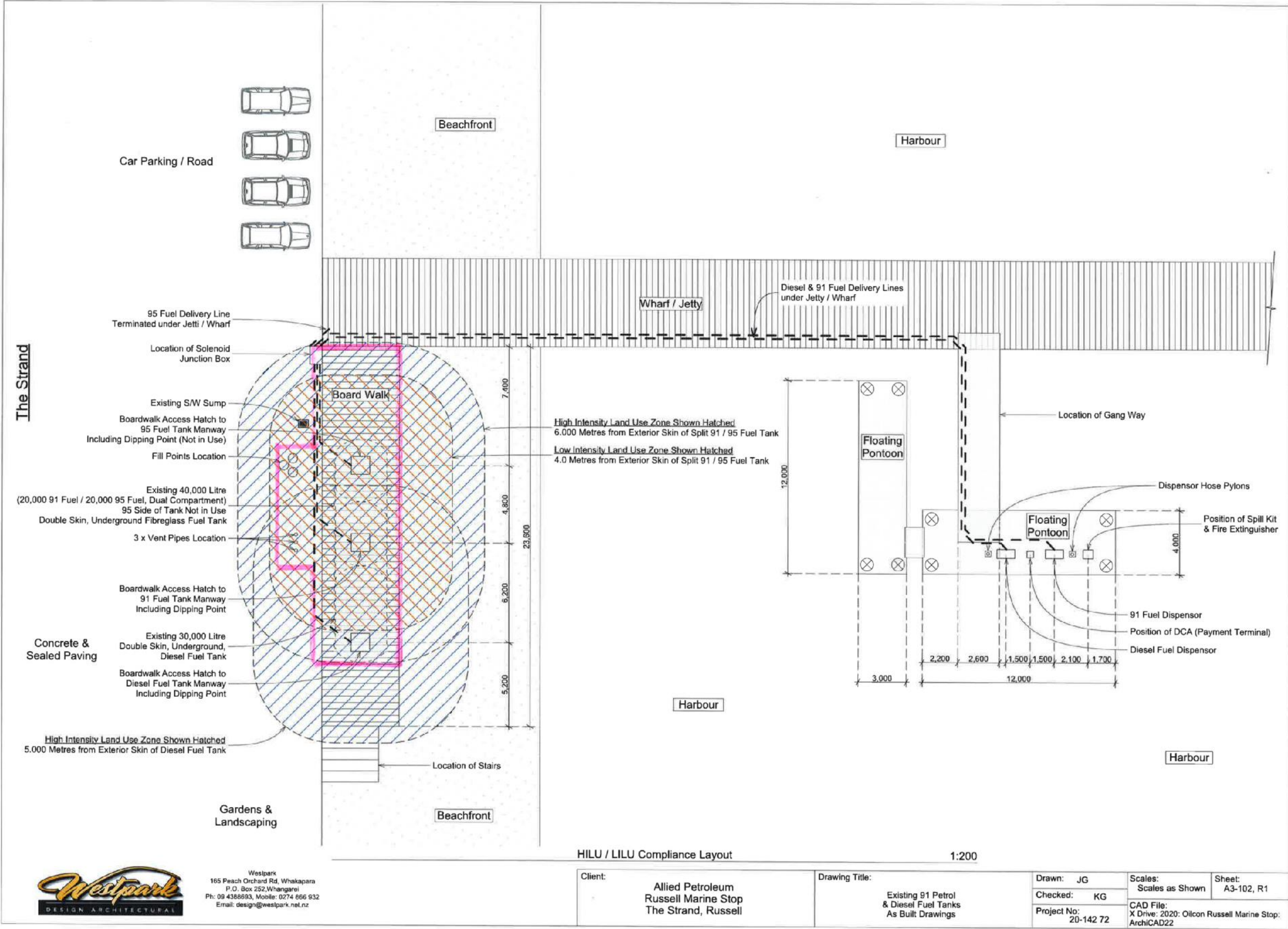


Allan Richards  
Consents Programme Manager – Coastal and Works











**6.3 PROPOSAL TO CONSTRUCT AN EROSION PROTECTION STRUCTURE ON COUNCIL OWNED RESERVE, OMAPERE****File Number: A3243104****Author: Ruben Wylie, Principle Planner Infrastructure****Authoriser: Andy Finch, General Manager - Infrastructure and Asset Management****TAKE PŪRONGO / PURPOSE OF THE REPORT**

To seek a decision from Council, via the Kaikohe-Hokianga Community Board, for a request to construct an erosion protection structure partially on Council owned local purpose reserve within the coastal environment of Omapere.

**WHAKARĀPOOTO MATUA / EXECUTIVE SUMMARY**

The owners of properties at 264 and 266 State Highway 12, Omapere propose to construct an erosion protection structure adjacent to the shoreline fronting their properties. The dwelling at these properties are at risk of being affected by shoreline retreat. Council owned local purpose reserve land is situated between the subject properties and toe of the dune scarp on which the erosion protection structure is proposed to be built.

A portion of the proposed structure will be located within the boundary of this reserve land. In keeping with the provisions of the Reserves Act 1977, and Council's Reserves Policy, approval of the proposal to occupy part of local purpose reserve with an erosion protection structure sits with Council. Staff recommendation is to approve the request.

**TŪTOHUNGA / RECOMMENDATION****That Council:**

- a) Approves the construction of, and associated occupation with, an erosion protection structure on Far North District Council owned local purpose reserved legally described as Lot 5 DP196729; and
- b) The approval is provided subject to a memorandum of encumbrance being recorded on the titles of Lot 1 DP196729 and Lot 1 DP310507 and that the encumbrance records the agreement that the owners of those properties:
  - I. bear full responsibility for the maintenance, repair, removal of the seawall (if required) during its lifetime, and end of its lifetime.
  - II. incur cost of the agreement construction and registration against title.
  - III. notify FNDC of any variation or modification of the erosion protection structure

To avoid doubt, approval is given both within Council's capacity as the administering body of the reserve and an affected person within the meaning of Section 95 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

**1) TĀHUHU KŌRERO / BACKGROUND**

At their meeting held 2 June 2021, the Kaikohe-Hokianga Community Board resolved to make the following recommendation to Council:



## **7.1 PROPOSAL TO CONSTRUCT AN EROSION PROTECTION STRUCTURE ON COUNCIL OWNED RESERVE, OMAPERE**

Agenda item 7.1 document number A3183735, pages 18 - 27 refers

### **RESOLUTION [2021/47]**

Moved: Member Emma Davis

Seconded: Member Alan Hesse

**That the ~~Kaikohe-Hokianga~~ Community Board recommend to Council that it:**

- a) Approves the construction of, and associated occupation with, an erosion protection structure on Far North District Council owned local purpose reserved legally described as Lot 5 DP196729; and**
- b) The approval is provided subject to a memorandum of encumbrance being recorded on the titles of Lot 1 DP196729 and Lot 1 DP310507 and that the encumbrance records the agreement that the owners of those properties:**
  - I. bear full responsibility for the maintenance, repair, removal of the seawall (if required) during its lifetime, and end of its lifetime.**
  - II. incur cost of the agreement construction and registration against title.**
  - III. notify FNDC of any variation or modification of the erosion protection structure**

**To avoid doubt, approval is given both within Council's capacity as the administering body of the reserve and an affected person within the meaning of Section 95 of the Resource Management Act 1991.**

**[CARRIED]**

The owners of properties at 264 and 266 State Highway have lodged resource consent applications with the Far North District Council and the Northland Regional Council to allow for the construction of an erosion protection structure, and ongoing occupation of space with the structure in the marine and coastal area. The proposal is to construct the erosion protection structure on the seaward side of FNDC owned reserve land. A portion of the structure will need to be located within the reserve land. FNDC has accordingly been treated as an affected party within the meaning of s95 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA). The applicants have sought written approval from FNDC in its capacity as the owner of the reserve land. Given the proposal is to occupy a portion of FNDC reserve land, the consideration of written approval must also address the requirements of the Reserves Act 1977.

Council's Reserve Policy sets out that decisions to allow occupation of reserves requires a decision by Council. In keeping with Council policy, the matter is first being brought to the Kaikohe-Hokianga Community Board for a subsequent recommendation to Council.

### **1.1) Application Details**

The proposal is to construct an erosion protection structure at the toe of a tall (5m high) sandy dune scarp at Omapere. The purpose of the work is to protect the properties at 264 and 266 State Highway 12. These two properties are located on the seaward side of state highway 12, opposite Opononi Area School. The approximate location of the subject site is shown in Figure 1.





**Figure 1.** Location of the proposed erosion protection work (red outline).

Cliff retreat driven by erosion of the dune toe is threatening the properties. Both dwellings on each property are near the scarp. The property at No 266 being closest, with approximately 2-3m between parts of the dwelling and the headscarp of the dune.

The seawall is to comprise of an engineered riprap structure, extending approximately 142m along the base of the dune scarp. Details of the structure are included in the assessment of environmental effects prepared for the resource consent application. That assessment is attached as Attachment 1.

### 1.2) Affected reserve land

Two parcels of Esplanade Reserve land are located seaward of the subject properties, legally described as Lot 5 DP196729 and Lot 2 DP91297 and are both Local Purpose reserves within the meaning of the Reserves Act 1977. The location of the proposed seawall in relation to the reserve land is depicted in Figure 2 below. The seaward most reserve parcel has largely eroded and now forms part of the active beach front dune face. The proposed seawall is intended to be built along the seaward boundary of the second reserve parcel (Lot 5 DP196729) for a distance of approximately 50m before angling towards the southeast crossing into the boundary of the second reserve (Lot 2 DP91297). This alignment generally follows the natural line of the dune toe.

The proposed structure is intended to terminate on the seaward side of the reserve opposite 262 State Highway 12 to the north and 268 and 270 State Highway 12 to the south. These properties are privately owned.



**Figure 2.** Reserve land affected by the proposed sea wall structure. Approximate seawall extent and location shown in red.

- It should be noted at this point that where reserve land owned by a local authority is subject to erosion, any portion of the reserve that is located seaward of the line of mean high water springs is divested from the local authority in accordance with Section 11 of the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011. Email correspondence from FNDC's Property Legalisation team to the applicant dated 5 August 2020 (included as Appendix E of the application report) confirms the status of the reserve land, stating:
  - - Lot 2 DP 91297 (the seaward most parcel) is completely under water and is now part of the Common Marine and Coastal Area.
    - Lot 5 DP 196729 is partially under water and that portion is lost to the Common Marine and Coastal Area and the title is divested for that portion of land now below MHWS.
- 
- With the above taken into account, any portion of the reserve parcels situated seaward of the dune toe are no longer owned by Council and it is therefore only relevant to consider the effects of the proposed activity on the portion of reserve located landward of the toe of the dune cliff.
- 

### 1.3) Coastal setting

a) The coastline in the vicinity of subject site includes number of existing seawalls. Most recently Waka Kotahi completed approximately 2km of erosion protection at various sections of the coastline to the north of the subject sites through to Opononi. In addition, various privately owned erosion



protection structures are located to the immediate south and north of the subject site. The approximate location and extent of these structures is depicted in Figure 3 below.



**Figure 1.** Approximate extent of existing erosion protection structures in the immediate area.

Finally, it should be noted that a 115m long rock revetment structure, similar to that which is the subject of this report, is proposed to be constructed to protect Freese park from shoreline retreat. This is subject to Council ratification and community consultation. The delivery timeframe for that project is May 2022.

## **2) MATAPAKI ME NGĀ KŌWHIRINGA / DISCUSSION AND OPTIONS**

### **2.1) Matters relevant to the decision**

- **Coastal processes**

- The resource consent application lodged with both FNDC and NRC includes a comprehensive assessment of the coastal environment, and detailed assessment of effects of the proposed activity on coastal processes, including potential impacts on adjoining properties. A summary of technical matters relevant to the determination requested by this report is provided in [Attachment 2](#). Full details of the technical assessment can be found in the application report attached as [Attachment 1](#).

- 

- The technical assessment included with the resource consent application has been prepared by a suitably qualified engineer experienced in coastal engineering. The assessment demonstrates

that the design of the proposed structure is unlikely to result in any significant adverse effects on coastal process. In particular, the assessment demonstrates that erosion on either end of the structure is not anticipated and that the structure has been designed to accommodate future sea level rise scenarios in accordance with relevant Ministry for the Environment guidelines.

- 
- **Coastal erosion hazard**
- Northland Regional Council has analysed and mapped coastal erosion hazards around Northland to better understand impacts into the future. The most up to date predicted future shoreline positions were released in 2021<sup>1</sup>. These are shown in Figure 4 below in relation to the subject properties.
- Coastal Erosion Hazard Zones contained in Figure 3 (CEHZ's) are defined as follows:
  - CEHZ1 – Predicted future shoreline at 2080 with a 66% probability of being exceeded.
  - CEHZ2 – Predicted future shoreline at 2115 with a 5% probability of being exceeded.
- The erosion hazard mapping indicates that both properties are likely to become significantly threatened within the next 50 years.



**Figure 2.** Predicted future shoreline in 2080 (orange line) and 2115 (yellow line). Green shading depicts reserve land subject to this report.

- **Resource consent requirements**
- The proposed erosion protection structure requires resource consents from the Northland Regional Council. Earthworks associated with the enabling works is also required by the Far North District Council and the Northland Regional Council. Importantly, advice from the Northland Regional Council is that, once the erosion protection structure has been constructed, the resource consents for the structure will no longer be required because consent is only required for construction, not ongoing occupation, and use. That no consent is required for the ongoing use of the seawall means that the owners of the asset will not be bound by any consent requirements, including requirements for on-going maintenance, addressing any adverse effects that may arise or removing the structure.
- **Access**

---

<sup>1</sup> It should be noted that the Coastal Erosion Hazard Zones set out in the application AEE are based on the earlier 2017 release as opposed to the 2021 release because the more recent maps were not available at the time the report was prepared. The use of the older data does not materially affect the overall assessment of coastal hazard exposure.



- Access to the affected portion of the reserve will be unaffected by the proposed erosion protection structure. The width of the reserve is approximately 10m from the toe of the dune scarps to the landward most boundary of the reserve. The proposed structure is to be located at the toe of the dune scarp and so access to the reserve will be unchanged from the current situation. Access to the beach from the reserve is presently not possible as a result of the c.5m high dune scarp (Figures 5 and 6).



**Figure 3.** Dune scarp seaward of No 266 SH12



- **Figure 4.** Dune scarp seaward of No 264.
- Council is the administering body for the reserve. Section 40 of the Reserves Act 1977 charges the administering body with managing and controlling reserves so as to ensure the use, enjoyment, development, maintenance, protection, and preservation, as the case may require, for the purpose for which it is classified.

- The reserve is designated Local Purpose Reserve (Esplanade) Reserve Under the Reserves Act 1977. The purpose of esplanade reserve is further defined in the Resource Management Act 1991 as being:

- - *An esplanade reserve or an esplanade strip has 1 or more of the following purposes:*
    - (a) *to contribute to the protection of conservation values by, in particular, —*
      - (i) *maintaining or enhancing the natural functioning of the adjacent sea, river, or lake; or*
      - (ii) *maintaining or enhancing water quality; or*
      - (iii) *maintaining or enhancing aquatic habitats; or*
      - (iv) *protecting the natural values associated with the esplanade reserve or esplanade strip; or*
      - (v) *mitigating natural hazards; or*
    - (b) *to enable public access to or along any sea, river, or lake; or*
    - (c) *to enable public recreational use of the esplanade reserve or esplanade strip and adjacent sea, river, or lake, where the use is compatible with conservation values.*
- Taking the above into account, it is considered that granting permission to allow for the construction of an erosion protection structure is generally in keeping with the purposes of esplanade reserves set out in the RMA, and the broad responsibilities of administering bodies set out in Section 40 of the Reserves Act 1977.

- 
- **Relevant FNDC Policy**
- FNDC Reserves Policy
- FNDC has a reserves policy dated March 2017. Section 4 of the Reserves Policy contains policies covering encroachments on Council owned land. Policy 2 sets out that Council will decline all future requests for private use of public land for access or occupation unless such use provides a benefit to the proper use and enjoyment of the public land. It is worth noting that the current reserve policy contains no policy direction or objectives that consider climate change, sea level rise or coastal erosion and so the policy direction it contains does not offer any substantive guidance in respect of the situation that is the subject of this report; and it is unclear whether Policy 2 was drafted with the proposal that is the subject of this report in mind.

- 
- As discussed in the previous section it is considered that granting approval of the proposal is generally in keeping with the purposes of esplanade reserves set out in the RMA, and the broad responsibilities of administering bodies set out in Section 40 of the Reserves Act 1977 because it will enable the preservation and maintenance of the of the reserve. Given the proposed seawall will have the effect of preserving the reserve through protection from progressive shoreline retreat, it is considered that the seawall is not inconsistent with Policy 2.

- 
- Draft Proposed Far North District Plan
- It is relevant to note that the policy direction in the Draft Proposed Far North District Plan seeks to discourage new development within the CEHZ1 (50-year erosion hazard line), with most new development within that zone requiring a discretionary resource consent. Although the plan remains in draft and has not yet been notified, the policy direction provides indication to Far North communities that development within the 50-year hazard zone is an activity that is not encouraged from a land use planning context.

- 
- Council's liability for an erosion protection structure on 'Local Purpose Reserve'  
As set out earlier in this report, once the consent for the erosion protection structure has been exercised, the consent holder will be able to surrender the resource consents and will not be bound



by any consenting requirements covering the on-going maintenance, removal or addressing potential adverse effects associated with changes in coastal processes. The lack of on-going resource consent could expose council to the liability of addressing these issues given it will be located on council land.

Should the Council decide to grant approval for the construction of the erosion protection structure on the reserve, it is recommended that a memorandum of encumbrance is registered against the record of titles of each of the applicants to formalise the existence of the seawall. The encumbrance can require agreement to the following conditions:

- Applicants' responsible for the maintenance, repair, removal of the seawall (if required) during its lifetime, and end of its lifetime
- Applicants' to incur cost of the agreement construction and registration against title
- Applicant to notify FNDC of any variation or modification of the seawall
- 
- It is considered that the above conditions will adequately address any issues council being potentially liable for the seawall and any associated effects on adjoining properties.
- 

## **2.2) Consideration of Alternatives**

The assessment of environmental effects for the resource consent application includes an assessment of alternatives options. These alternatives are summarised below.

### Do Nothing – Allow Retreat of the Coastline

The Assessment of Environmental Effects (AEE) report identifies that the shoreline is progressively retreating and allowing the coastline to continue to retreat would likely require the dwellings within each property to be relocated to the CEHZ2 (2115) hazard line. The AEE report sets out that this option is not considered to be practicable owing to the progressive nature of the shoreline retreat and the fact that the owners would be faced with the same issue in later years. This option was accordingly ruled out.

### 'Soft' Protection Options

The AEE report includes an assessment of soft protection options which include importing sand, planting, and installation of groynes to assist with the retention of imported sand. To be effective, the groyne structures would substantially impede access along the beach and would potentially disrupt longshore sediment transport – potentially causing unacceptable erosion at adjoining sites. Importing sand was identified as not being practicable because the material would need to be located seaward of the natural coastline position of the rest of the embayment and so would be subject to potentially rapid erosion and transport to the wider beach system – meaning that sand would need to continuously imported in order for it to provide an effective means of erosion protection.

## **2.3) Options Assessment**

### Option 1: Withhold written approval

It is unlikely the application would be able to proceed in its current form without FNDC giving approval to occupy the reserve with the seawall. Approval is required for the resource consent applications to proceed without notification. However, the seawall cannot proceed without approval from the administering body of the reserve because doing so would be inconsistent with the legal requirements of the Reserves Act 1977.

In effect, this option would severely limit the ability for the owners of the two properties fronting the FNDC reserve land to protect their properties and dwellings from ongoing erosion of the coastal cliff. Ultimately, this option will require that the landowners relocate the dwellings given the current level of risk they are exposed to.

### Option 2 (recommended option): Provide written approval

This option will allow the two properties to construct a seawall at the toe of the remaining reserve land. This option will provide protection of coastal erosion for at least a 50-year term with negligible impact on the use of the existing reserve land. It is considered any liability that council would be

exposed to by virtue of it being the landowner on which the structure is partially located can be suitably limited by way of a memorandum of encumbrance placed on the titles of applicants' properties.

### **Take Tūtohunga / Reason for the recommendation**

b) Option 2 is the recommended option for the following reasons:

- There is minimal council reserve remaining and that which does remain has limited value as a local purpose reserve.
- The proposed structure will not affect access to or from the reserve above those affects caused by the 5m high dune cliff.
- The application documentation provides a detailed assessment of the proposal's effect on coastal processes and demonstrates with sufficient levels of certainty that the proposal is unlikely to exacerbate coastal erosion processes and has been designed to accommodate sea level rise.
- The option will allow two properties to protect existing dwellings that are at high risk of being affected by coastal erosion in the near future and will allow other options to be implemented (e.g. managed retreat) as the effects of sea level rise become more acute.

### **3) PĀNGA PŪTEA ME NGĀ WĀHANGA TAHUA / FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS AND BUDGETARY PROVISION**

All legal costs associated with the drafting interpretation of the memorandum of encumbrance are to be borne by the owners of the properties that have sought to construct the erosion protection structure on Council owned reserve land. Given the encumbrance will place the responsibility of the maintenance and eventual removal of the seawall on the owners of the properties described as Lot 1 DP196729 and Lot 1 DP310507, it is not expected the recommended resolution will carry any ongoing financial implications.

### **ĀPITIHINGA / ATTACHMENTS**

1. **Proposed Omapere Seawall Assessment of Environmental Effects - A3184151** [↓](#) 
2. **Proposed Omapere Seawall - Summary of Relevant Technical Matters - A3184158** [↓](#) 

**Hōtaka Take Ōkawa / Compliance Schedule:**

Full consideration has been given to the provisions of the Local Government Act 2002 S77 in relation to decision making, in particular:

1. A Local authority must, in the course of the decision-making process,
  - a) Seek to identify all reasonably practicable options for the achievement of the objective of a decision; and
  - b) Assess the options in terms of their advantages and disadvantages; and
  - c) If any of the options identified under paragraph (a) involves a significant decision in relation to land or a body of water, take into account the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral land, water sites, waahi tapu, valued flora and fauna and other taonga.
2. This section is subject to Section 79 - Compliance with procedures in relation to decisions.

| <b>He Take Ōkawa / Compliance Requirement</b>   | <b>Aromatawai Kaimahi / Staff Assessment</b>  |
|---|---|
| State the level of significance (high or low) of the issue or proposal as determined by the <a href="#">Council's Significance and Engagement Policy</a>  | It is not considered that the recommended resolution triggers the thresholds in any of the criteria set out in the current significance and engagement policy.  |
| State the relevant Council policies (external or internal), legislation, and/or community outcomes (as stated in the LTP) that relate to this decision.   | The relevant legislation is the Reserves Act 1977. The relevant policy is Councils Reserves Policy, dated 16 March 2017. The implications of the recommended resolution in respect of the provisions of the Reserves Act and the Reserves Policy are discussed in the body of the report. |
| State whether this issue or proposal has a District wide relevance and, if not, the ways in which the appropriate Community Board's views have been sought.   | The proposal that is the subject of this report does not affect the district as a whole. Whilst the topic of climate change and its impact on coastal erosion is of relevant to the district, that is not a topic that is appropriate to broach as part of this report.                   |
| State the possible implications for Māori and how Māori have been provided with an opportunity to contribute to decision making if this decision is significant and relates to land and/or any body of water. | The views of mana whenua have not been sought. The applicant has consulted with mana whenua as part of the consent application and the outcome of that consultation is reported in is the AEE report attached as Attachment 1.  |
| Identify persons likely to be affected by or have an interest in the matter, and how you have given consideration to their views or preferences (for example – youth, the aged and those with disabilities).  | Taking into account the conclusions of the technical assessment contained with the AEE report (Attachment 1), it is considered that no persons are likely to be affected by the proposal.   |
| State the financial implications and where budgetary provisions have been made to support this decision.  | Refer to Section 3 of this report.  |
| Chief Financial Officer review.   | The Chief Financial Officer has reviewed this report.   |

# **Ōmāpere Seawall**

for

**Clutterbuck & Petrie**



**Assessment of Environmental Effects  
and  
Application for Resource Consents**

**Northern Regional Council**

**October 2020**



**COASTAL MANAGEMENT AND ENGINEERING**





# Ōmāpere Seawall

**264 & 266 SH12 Foreshore, Ōmāpere**

## APPLICANTS:

**264 SH12 Ōmāpere:**

**A.N. Petrie & H. Petrie**

**266 SH12 Ōmāpere:**

**M.J. Clutterbuck & P.L Harvey**

**Assessment of Environmental Effects and  
Application for Resource Consent**

| Document Control |          |             |
|------------------|----------|-------------|
| Description      | Revision | Date Issued |
| Resource Consent | -        | 02/10/2020  |
|                  |          |             |



P.O. Box 185

Orewa

P: 09 428 0040

M: 021 627 193

E: [coastal@daviscoastal.co.nz](mailto:coastal@daviscoastal.co.nz)

**Job Reference:** 1918







## Table of Contents

|     |  |    |
|-----|--|----|
| 1.0 | Introduction .....                               | 7  |
| 1.1 | Resource Consents Sought                         |    |
| 1.2 | Definitions                                      |    |
| 2.0 | Description of Existing Environment .....        | 10 |
| 2.1 | Location   |    |
| 2.2 | Wider Physical Environment                       |    |
| 2.3 | Site Description                                 |    |
| 2.4 | Wider Built Environment                          |    |
| 3.0 | Coastal Processes .....                          | 20 |
| 3.1 | Wind   |    |
| 3.2 | Tides  |    |
| 3.3 | Extreme Water Levels                             |    |
| 3.4 | Wave Environment                                 |    |
| 3.5 | Coastal Erosion                                  |    |
| 3.6 | Sea Level Rise                                   |    |
| 4.0 | Proposal .....                                   | 35 |
| 4.1 | Rock Riprap Seawall                              |    |
| 4.2 | Timber Stair                                     |    |
| 4.3 | Earthworks                                       |    |
| 4.4 | Dune Revegetation                                |    |
| 4.5 | Construction Access and Methodology              |    |
| 4.6 | Extent of Consent                                |    |
| 5.0 | Options Assessment .....                         | 43 |
| 5.1 | Overview   |    |
| 5.2 | Do Nothing – Allow Retreat of the Coastline      |    |
| 5.3 | 'Soft' Protection Solutions                      |    |
| 5.4 | Hard Protection Armouring Discussion             |    |
| 6.0 | Statutory Assessment .....                       | 48 |
| 6.1 | Resource Management Act 1991                     |    |
| 6.2 | Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011 |    |
| 6.3 | New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement             |    |
| 6.4 | Northern Regional Policy Statement               |    |
| 6.5 | Northern Regional Soil and Water Plan            |    |



|          |  |    |
|----------|--|----|
|          | 6.6 <i>Proposed Northland Regional Plan – Appeals Version</i>          |    |
| 7.0      | Consultation .....   | 68 |
|          | 7.1 <i>Mana Whenua / Customary Marine Title Applicant Consultation</i> |    |
| 8.0      | Assessment of Environmental Effects (Schedule 4) .....                 | 69 |
|          | 8.1 <i>Preservation of Natural Character</i>                           |    |
|          | 8.2 <i>Cultural / Historic Heritage</i>                                |    |
|          | 8.3 <i>Visual Impact</i>   |    |
|          | 8.4 <i>Public Access to and along the CMA</i>                          |    |
|          | 8.5 <i>Ecology and Natural Environment</i>                             |    |
|          | 8.6 <i>Effects on Coastal Processes</i>                                |    |
| 9.0      | Conclusion .....   | 92 |
| Appendix | A – Drawings   |    |
| Appendix | B – Notification Assessment  |    |
| Appendix | C – Detailed Statutory Assessment                                      |    |
| Appendix | D – Iwi Consultation   |    |
| Appendix | E – Status of Esplanade Reserves                                       |    |
| Appendix | F – Communication with LINZ  |    |
| Appendix | G – Certificate of Title   |    |



## 1.0 Introduction

The Applicant's properties are at 264 and 266 State Highway 12, Ōmāpere. They face onto the Hokianga Harbour, along a stretch of coastline characterised by a tall sandy dune scarp. Cliff retreat driven by erosion of the dune toe is threatening the backshore and the Applicant's properties. It is proposed to place a rock riprap seawall to protect the bank toe from further retreat, ensuring the Applicant's dwellings remain viable.

A timber foreshore access stair is proposed, to provide the Applicants with coastline access. Earthworks to reshape the bank slope will be undertaken and the slope re-planted with dune-binding species.

Application for Resource Consent is being sought for these Activities. A single application is being made on behalf of both parties. The proposed seawall will be a cohesive structure, armouring the beachfront of both Applicant's properties. However, two separate Resource Consents are sought, for the extent of structure seaward of each property.

The Applicants have instructed Davis Coastal Consultants to act for them in this matter and prepare this Application Report and Assessment of Environmental Effects.

### 1.1 Resource Consents Sought

A summary of the Consents sought is presented in Table 1.1.

All works occur above Mean High Water Springs, and this application therefore falls under the jurisdiction of the *Northland Regional Water and Soil Plan*. A separate Application will be made to the Far North District Council (FNDC) for additional Consents under the Far North District Plan.

In addition, the *Northland Regional Plan – Appeals Version* was published on the 29<sup>th</sup> July 2019, and updated in August 2020, and the relevant provisions having immediate legal effect have been addressed within this application pursuant to Section 86(3) of the Resource Management Act.



Resource Consent for Land Use that '*contravenes a Regional rule*' is sought under Section 9 (2) of the Resource Management Act.

Application is made for Land Use Consents for Land Disturbance and Earthworks under the Northland Regional Water and Soil Plan (NRWSP). The works are defined as Discretionary Activities.

Application is also made under the Proposed Northland Regional Plan – Appeals Version for the construction of hard protection structures as a Discretionary Activity.

Overall, the proposal is considered to require Consent as a Discretionary Activity under the relevant Regional Plans.

| Consent  | RMA Clause | Plan                | Clause    | Activity Status |
|--|------------|---------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| Land Disturbance within Riparian Management Zone – Earthworks more than 50m <sup>3</sup> /200m <sup>2</sup>      | 9(2)       | NRWSP               | 34.3.1    | Discretionary   |
| Land Disturbance adjacent to Site of Significance to Maori   | 9(2)       | NRWSP               | 34.3.1    | Discretionary   |
| Vegetation Clearance in Riparian Management Zone – does not exceed 200m <sup>2</sup>                             | 9(2)       | NRWSP               | 34.2c(ii) | Permitted       |
| Land disturbance activities within the Riparian Management Zone – Environmental Standards                        | 9(2)       | NRWSP               | 34.1.3    | Discretionary   |
| Hard Protection Structures   | 9(2)       | NRC Appeals Version | C1.1.22   | Discretionary   |
| Earthworks – within Coastal Riparian and foredune management area – 200m <sup>2</sup> exposed earth at any time. | 9(2)       | NRC Appeals Version | C.8.3.1   | Permitted       |

Table 1.1 – Summary of consents sought





## 1.2 Definitions

Within this report terminology for the intertidal and tidal area is consistent with those defined in the Resource Management Act:

**Coastal Marine Area – CMA** – *“means the foreshore, seabed, and coastal water, and the air space above the water -*

*(a) of which the seaward boundary is the outer limits of the territorial sea:*

*(b) of which the landward boundary is the line of mean high water springs...”*

**Common Marine and Coastal Area – CMCA** – *“means the marine and coastal area other than –*

*(a) specified freehold land located in that area; and*

*(b) any area that is owned by the Crown...”*

**Mean High Water Springs – MHWS** – *“the average of the heights of each pair of successive high waters during that period of about 24 hours in each semi-lunation (approximately every 14 days) when the range of tides is the greatest”*

**Foreshore** – *“means any land covered and uncovered by the flow and ebb of the tide at mean spring tides and, in relation to any such land that forms part of the bed of a river, does not include any area that is not part of the coastal marine area”*

**Backshore** – All land above Mean High Water Springs



## 2.0 Description of Existing Environment

### 2.1 Location

The site is located at Ōmāpere, on the eastern bank of the Hokianga Harbour, in Northland (Figure 2.1a). The Applicant's properties are located at 264 and 266 State Highway 12, Ōmāpere. They are bounded by State Highway 12 to the east and the Hokianga Harbour to the west (Figure 2.1b).

The subject properties are legally described as Lot 2 DP196729 (No 264) and Lot 1 DP310507 (No 266). Two parcels of Esplanade Reserve land are located seaward of the subject properties, legally described as Lot 5 DP196729 and Lot 2 DP91297. As discussed subsequently (Section 6.1.1) historic erosion is such that title to the most seaward Reserve (Lot 2 DP91297) has been divested and is now CMCA.

The proposed seawall is primarily located within these adjacent Reserve areas seaward of the subject residential properties, at approximate co-ordinates 1635250mE, 6068090mN on the New Zealand Transverse Mercator Projection.



Figure 2.1a: Location Plan



Figure 2.1b: Applicant's properties and adjacent Esplanade Reserves

## 2.2 Wider Physical Environment

The Hokianga Harbour is the fourth largest harbour in New Zealand, located on Northland's west coast. The origins of the Hokianga Harbour are that of a drowned river valley, formed when sea levels rose to their current levels approximately 7,000 years ago. The upper harbour is characterised by a network of meandering river channels and tidal mudflats, with the main harbour basin having an elongated form orientated from south-west to north-east, approximately 2km wide. The landform of the harbour basin is dominated by the large dunes to the northern arm of the harbour spit. The entrance to the harbour is approximately 1km wide and characterised by strong tidal currents, the large waves of the open coast, and an entrance bar (additional information on the wider harbour processes is provided in Section 3.5).

The small coastal town of Ōmāpere borders the harbour's southern shore, approximately 2km upstream from the harbour entrance. It has a slightly embayed coastline that generally faces in a westerly direction. The coastal margin is characterised by a sandy beach with a higher rear dune system, typically modified with housing development above the dune. Dune vegetation tends to be predominately pine, overhanging grasses and small exotic and native plants, although there are some larger mature Pohutukawa towards the central embayment. The



landward area behind the coastal plain is a mixture of residential, rural and bushland, with a hilly topography.

### 2.2.1 Site Geology

Review of the 1:250,000 Geology Map of New Zealand provided online by GNS Science indicates the site is underlain by *“unconsolidated to poorly consolidated sand, peat, mud and shell deposits of the Karioitahi Group (estuarine, lacustrine, swamp, alluvial and colluvial)”*, with the deposit of these sediments running along the eastern bank of the Harbour (Figure 2.2.1). Landward of this (the orange geological units) are conglomerate and sandstone derived from the Northern Allocthon comprising the Waititi, the Otueka and the Waiwhatawhata Formations.

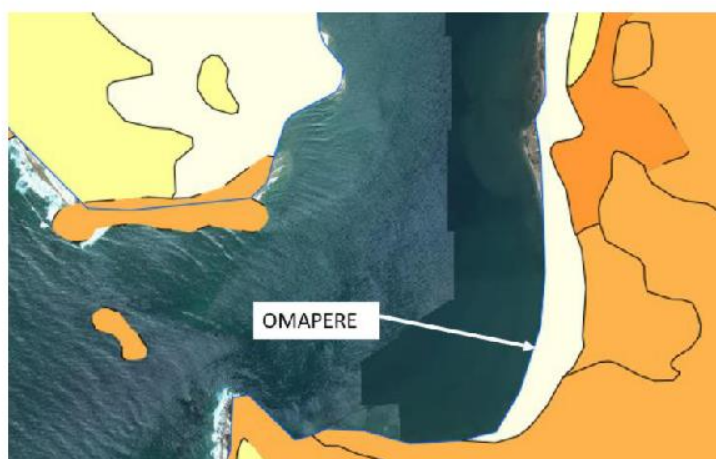


Figure 2.2.1: Excerpt from the Geology of the Auckland Urban Area – IGNS

### 2.2.2 Nearshore Bathymetry

Hydrographic Chart NZ4212 published by Land Information New Zealand (LINZ) provides information on the bathymetry of the mouth and inner basin of the Hokianga Harbour (Figure 2.2.2). The chart shows the area within the bounds of the Ōmāpere embayment as having a gently sloping seafloor from the coast at approximately 1:100 down to -5 Chart Datum (CD), with the main Harbour channel approximately 500m offshore having varying water depths approximately 8-10m below CD. Scour due to ebb tidal currents has deepened the channel at the mouth of the Harbour down to -20 - -25CD, with the channel located adjacent the southern head of the Harbour.





Figure 2.2.2: Excerpt from NZ Chart 4212 showing bathymetry of Harbour

### 2.3 Site Description

The two adjacent residential properties are generally grassed, with the dwellings developed on the modified backdune. This area is elevated above the adjacent Harbour, with the contours sloping gently from the road at RL 7 towards the dwellings at approximately RL 6. Contours rise seaward of the properties to the dune crest at approximately RL 7 – 8, before a steep dune scarp approximately 5m high leads to the foreshore at approximately RL 2.5 – 3.0. Geotechnical testing on the foreshore indicate the beach comprises a veneer approximately 2 – 2.5m deep, with a harder layer underneath varying from approximately RL 0.5 – 1.0 across the site.

Both of the dwellings are in close proximity to the scarp. The property at No 266 being closest with approximately 2-3m between parts of the dwelling and the headscarp of the dune (Photograph 2.3a).

There is relatively sparse vegetation on the site. The dune scarp has negligible vegetation, and a single semi-mature Pōhutukawa (*Metrocideros excelsa*) and a large mature pine are located on the headscarp seaward of No 264 (Photograph 2.3b).





A river (the 'Waihuka' stream) outlets onto the foreshore (Figure 2.3) immediately to the south of 266 SH12, with the body of the river heading inland in a south-easterly direction before being piped in a culvert under the road, and it is assumed this takes stormwater flows from the inland catchment. The dune scarp runs along the north-eastern bank of the river around two sides of No 266, and continues along the front of No 264.

In addition, a swale carrying overland flow runs from north to south at the landward side of No 266, and outlets into the adjacent river body upstream from the outlet in the beach face. On the southern bank of the river is a protruding sandspit, the more elevated areas of this spit have become vegetated in exotics including mature pines.

It is understood this area has significance to local iwi, with the following description of the Waihuka stream provided:

*"Midway along Omapere bay is the Waihuka stream. There was once an ancient wahi tapu and a tauranga waka at its mouth. The wahi tapu was on a point of land on the northern bank, the tauranga was on its inland sand. Both were completely destroyed by flooding and rough tides in 1904. The foreshore further inland beyond where the wahi tapu and tauranga waka were in 1904, has also eroded. The human remains were gathered up and buried. Fewer human remains are now found. Among the artefacts recovered were unfinished adzes"* (John Klaricich, Statement of Evidence, WAI2003)



Figure 2.3: Site plan with features shown



Photograph 2.3a: Dwelling at No 266 in proximity to cliff headscarp



Photograph 2.3b: River outlet, adjacent sand spit with vegetation including pines at elevated areas

## 2.4 Wider Built Environment

The bank at the seaward extent of the Applicant's dwellings is at present unarmoured. However, the wider Ōmāpere embayment has been reasonably modified through construction of armouring and water access structures. The location of some of these in relation to the site is shown below (Figure 2.4).



Figure 2.4: Wider built environment of Ōmāpere embayment





The armouring closest to the subject properties (approximately 450m south, 400m north) are predominantly rock riprap (Photograph 2.4a) or timber armouring structures, or a combination of both (Photograph 2.4b). Many properties have also built timber access stairs to the foreshore.

The most significant structure to the south (approximately 450m from the site) is located immediately north of the Copthorne Hotel, where a large riprap wall has been placed, in addition to what appears to be an area of reclaimed land. Seaward of the riprap wall a public boat ramp and jetty is located, with the timber jetty being approximately 90m long.



**Photograph 2.4a: Riprap armouring north of site**



**Photograph 2.4b: Combination rock rip-rap and timber armouring**



In addition to the private seawall structures, 2km of new seawall is currently under construction by the New Zealand Travel Agency (NZTA) extending from Kokohuia Point (approximately 1km north of the site) to Opononi township. It is understood the motivation for this armouring is to address the coastal erosion threatening the State Highway in areas between the two coastal townships (Photograph 2.4c).

Whilst the wall was still under construction at the time of the site investigation (November 2019), there appeared to be a large amount of small (gabion sized and smaller) rock present in the face of the seawall (Photograph 2.4d), which is highly likely to migrate out of the wall face and onto the adjacent beach as a result of wave action. This highlights the potential issues with rock wall construction, and also the necessity of strict control of rock size grading to ensure this issue is avoided.



**Photograph 2.4c: NZTA seawall currently under construction**





**Photograph 2.4d: Small rock present in face of new NZTA seawall**



### 3.0 Coastal Processes

#### 3.1 Wind

Given the remoteness of the site, there is little readily available wind data for the Hokianga Harbour. Data from NIWA (2013) for four sites around Northland are shown below (Figure 3.1a), with the wind roses comprising mean annual wind frequencies from hourly observations. The closest site is that shown at Kaikohe, which is located approximately 50km inland of Ōmāpere, however the only coastal site is Cape Reinga (200km to the north), which is significantly more exposed.

This greater exposure is reflected in the strength of winds recorded at the Cape, with the south-westerly predominant and mean annual wind speeds are approximately 30km/hr. Kaikohe by comparison is far more sheltered, with a slight south-westerly predominance and mean annual speeds approximately 10km/hr.

A wind rose from the online wind app 'Windy' for Ōmāpere is provided below (Figure 3.1b), which is displaying average data from a number of forecast models across eight years from 2012-2019. There is a dominance of the south-westerly wind in the record, as would be expected for a site on the west coast. The most common speeds range from 0 – 32km/hr, with fewer instances of winds from 32-43km/hr coming from the west and south-west.

For the site at Ōmāpere inside the Harbour, the southern head of the harbour provides sheltering from the predominant south-westerly. The site is exposed to winds from the west through to the north.

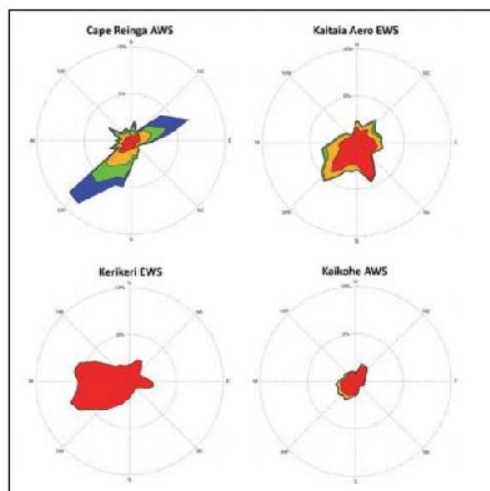


Figure 3.1a: Compiled wind roses for four Northland sites (ex NIWA, 2013)

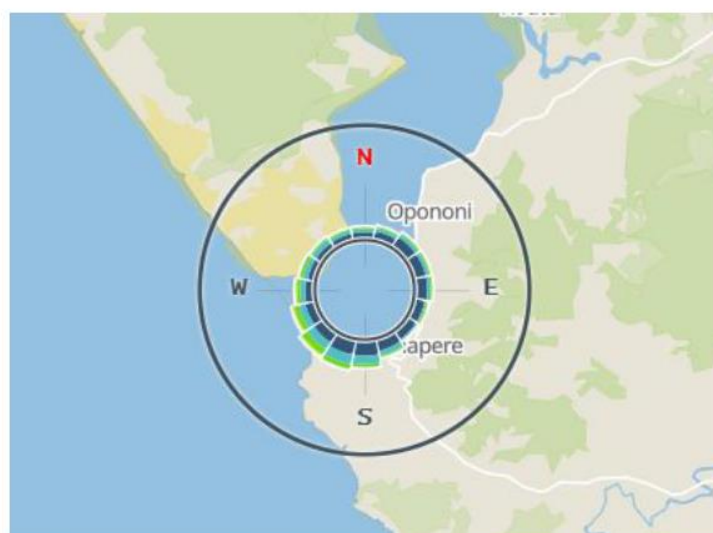


Figure 3.1b: Wind record for Ōmāpere, 2012-2019, ex windy.app

### 3.2 Tides

Tidal data is published online by LINZ, with a tidal range provided for Ōmāpere as a Secondary Port (Table 3.2). The LINZ port tidal level is relative to Taranaki Chart Datum (TCD). MHWS for the Ōmāpere / Opononi coastline was also published in the regional flood hazard reporting by



the Northland Regional Council (2017), relevant to One Tree Point datum (OTP). This level has also been shown in the table below.

The local reference benchmark uses an MSL datum, with the underlying site topographic survey and all levels on the drawings provided relative to this MSL (ref: SM1026, Code DVQH ex LINZ). Clarification was sought from LINZ as to the appropriate conversion factor from TCD to local MSL. This communication is attached as Appendix F. LINZ provided MSL and MHWS for Ōmāpere, relative to New Zealand Vertical Datum (2016), and also to OTP. This value differs from that provided by the NRC, and is shown in the Table below. As the assumptions made in the NRC reporting are not known, and that it is also the same MHWS value used for all sites within the Hokianga Harbour, the value provided by LINZ in terms of OTP is considered more likely to be correct for Ōmāpere.

The relationship between MSL and MHWS has been used to represent MHWS in terms of MSL, and this range is provided in the table below and this MHWS adopted on the Drawings.

| Port                        | MHWS | MHWN | MLWN | MLWS |
|-----------------------------|------|------|------|------|
| Ōmāpere CD                  | 2.9  | 2.3  | 0.8  | 0.1  |
| Ōmāpere OTP (ex NRC, 2017)  | 1.66 |      |      |      |
| Ōmāpere OTP (ex LINZ, 2020) | 1.38 |      |      |      |
| Ōmāpere MSL                 | 1.2  | 0.6  | -0.9 | -1.6 |

**Table 3.2: Summary of relevant tidal data published by LINZ, NRC (Tonkin & Taylor, 2017) and tidal range to MSL adopted at site**

### 3.3 Extreme Water Levels

During storm events water levels become higher due to lower atmospheric pressure and the effect of onshore wind energy “pushing” water towards the coast and up harbours in an effect called storm surge. Storm tides can be defined as tides that include the effect of storm surge and these represent the highest range of water levels experienced in coastal regions in decadal



time scales. There are also other oceanic driven variations in the water level that affect extreme tidal levels that are captured in the tidal record.

In addition to storm tides, waves have the ability to raise the effective sea-level at the coastline. Wave set up can be considered as additional water level due to wind blowing onto the shore and waves breaking on shore “piling up” water and holding water level higher with the energy expended. This wide scale increase in the water level at the shoreline has the potential to result in direct inundation of the coastal margin. Water will flow from the sea towards all areas of the coast below the “set-up” water level until the area is inundated or the tide drops resulting in a lower water level.

A report prepared by Tonkin & Taylor (2017) for the Northland Regional Council (NRC) performed an in-depth study using hydrodynamic models calibrated against tide-gauges to calculate extreme water levels, including wave effects, along the Northland coastline. Joint probability modelling techniques were then applied to calculate the occurrence likelihood of the extreme sea-level elevations.

Data is provided for two Cells on this coastline, described as ‘Open coast’ and ‘Sheltered’. The Ōmāpere – Opononi coastline is located within the Harbour, and it is assumed the modelling work informing these calculations indicates that open coast waves are propagating through the Harbour entrance. Whilst the reporting does not provide location information on these cells, given that the site at Ōmāpere is approximately opposite the entrance to the Harbour, it is considered that the values provided for ‘Open coast’ are more likely to apply at this location.

The simulated extreme storm tide levels, and the storm tide level including wave set-up for Ōmāpere - Opononi are shown in the table below (Table 3.3). The levels provided in the reporting are relative to One Tree Point Vertical Datum 1964 (OTP1964). These levels have then been converted to the MSL datum (this requires a conversion of -0.23, say -0.2 from OTP1964)

| Omapere & Opononi – Cell A   | Current 1% AEP (m OTP) | Current 1% AEP (m MSL) |
|------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| Storm tide                   | 2.4                    | 2.2                    |
| Static WL (including set-up) | 2.8                    | 2.6                    |

Table 3.3: Predicted storm tide and wave setup extreme levels (ex TnT, 2017)





### 3.4 Wave Environment

The Hokianga Harbour is a semi-enclosed harbour environment, and the majority of the coastline of the Harbour is sheltered from the open ocean wave environment of the west coast. However, the site along the Ōmāpere coastline is immediately adjacent the mouth of the harbour. Accordingly, whilst some sheltering will be provided to the site as these large ocean waves are forced to break on the bars at the mouth of the Harbour, and then diffract into the wider Harbour basin, it is likely that a measure of this wave energy propagates across the harbour basin and impacts the site. This is evident in the aerial images of the Harbour, where the diffraction of wave energy entering the Harbour and then spreading into the bay is evident (Figure 3.4a).

In reporting produced by Tonkin & Taylor (2017) for the Northland Regional Council, wave data from a location approximately 5km offshore from Ahipara (approximately 45km north along the west coast from the Harbour entrance) was presented. Mean wave height and also the 1% Exceedance wave heights are provided below (Table 3.4), with the wave rose also shown (Figure 3.4b). The wave rose indicates a record entirely dominated by the south-westerly wave climate. This wave environment is expected to be very similar offshore from the Hokianga Harbour.

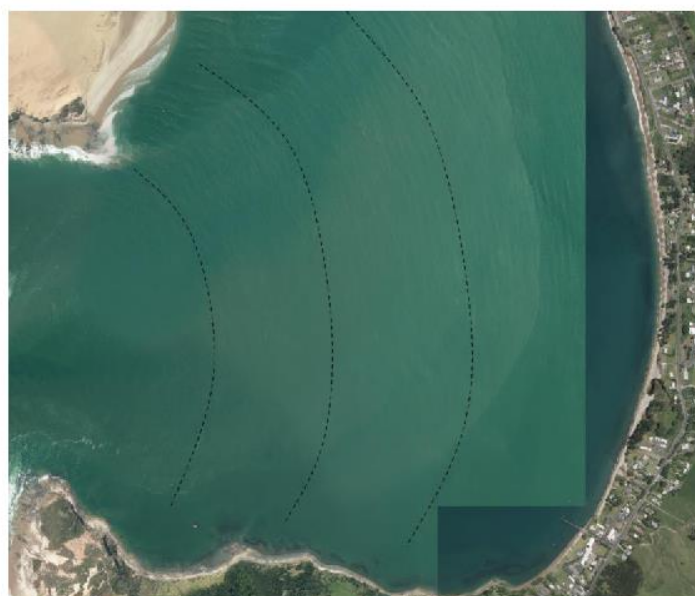


Figure 3.4a: Indicative wave fronts

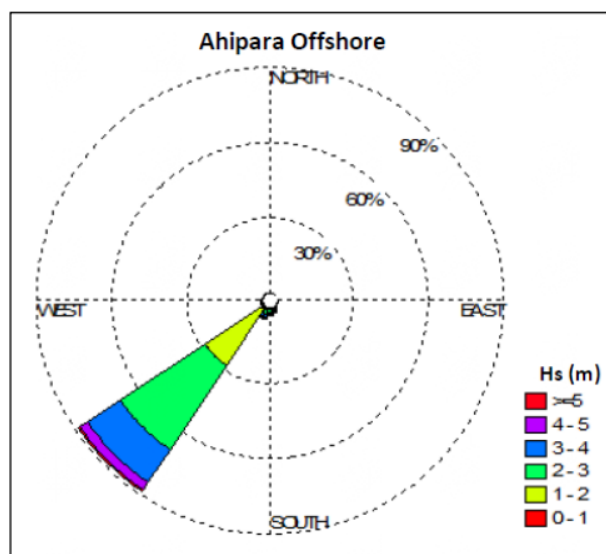


Figure 3.4b: Ahipara wave rose (T&T, 2017)

| Wave Event    | Hs (m) | Tp (s) |
|---------------|--------|--------|
| Mean          | 2.5    | 13     |
| 1% Exceedance | 5.0    | 14     |

Table 3.4: Offshore wave Ahipara (T&T, 2017)

Depending on tidal state, this offshore wave will likely be forced to break and lose energy as it passes through the Harbour entrance. Waves will then be re-generated again across the 4km fetch across the Harbour basin. This reduction in wave energy through diffraction into the Harbour has not been quantified. However, wave action impacting the base of the dune will occur only on the upper part of the tidal cycle and will be depth limited. At high tides when waves are reaching the upper foreshore, the offshore wave will be reduced by shallow water depth. This reduction will increase during periods of high sand levels on the beach. Observation of the beach indicated a nearshore wave environment dominated by plunging breakers on the steeper upper foreshore (Photograph 3.4), with run-up locally raising water level inbetween beach cusps (see 3.4.1 below).



Photograph 3.4: Plunging breakers

Existing level at the foreshore at the base of the dune was approximately RL 3. MHWS (at RL 1.2 as above) is seaward of the base of the dune and therefore waves are not reaching the scarp. However, during periods of low sand levels on the beach, by projecting the flatter gradient lower intertidal area landward to the base of the dune, sand level could decrease to approximately RL 1.5 – 2.

Assuming a wave period of 7-10s, and calculating incident wave length on this basis, wave height will be limited to approximately 80% of the water depth at a location  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the wavelength offshore from where the still water level intersects the foreshore (Figure 3.4c). Assuming a storm tide event with water level of RL 2.2 (given an AEP of 1% as above), the assumed significant wave height for the site during this extreme event is approximately 0.4 – 0.7m.

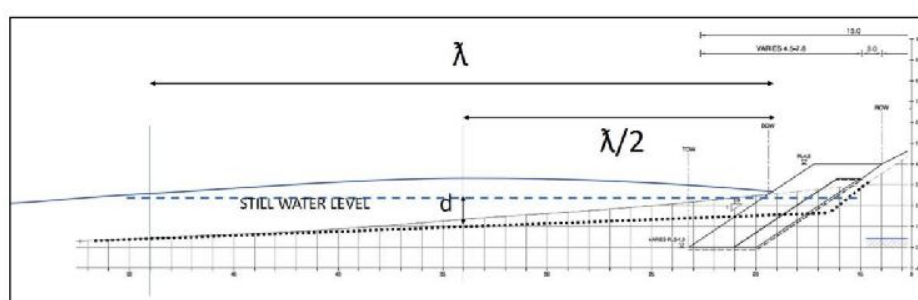


Figure 3.4c: Indicative water depth for depth limited wave height



### 3.4.1 Beach Cusps

A network of beach cusps are present on the shoreline at Ōmāpere, most evident along the 800m of beach north of the site to the northern headland of the Ōmāpere embayment (Figure 3.4.1). These features are approximately 30m across, and are typically described as *“regularly spaced crescentic morphological patterns formed in the swash zone of a beach. They consist of seaward-pointing horns with steep lateral slopes separated by a gentler sloping embayment”* (Dodd et al, 2008).

There are two primary theories as to the formation of these features; the ‘standing edge wave theory’ is based on a near shoreline interaction between waves approaching the shore and waves set up perpendicular to the shoreline called edge waves, and then wave interactions resulting in preferential erosion; and the ‘self-organisation theory’ which is based on positive feedback between beach morphology and the flow of water creating small relief patterns, which then experience preferential erosion / accretion in a positive feedback loop, forming the cusps.

Whilst determining the origin of these cusps is not important for this project, these features do provide information on the nearshore beach processes. That is, there is reasonable agreement that the conditions associated with cusp generation are *“usually associated with reflective wave conditions, relatively steep beach gradients, and normally incident waves, which can be either plunging or surging”* (Dodd et al, 2008). This indicates that the nearshore processes acting on the beach are dominated by the wave climate outlined above, that is the deep water waves propagating through the mouth of the harbour and approaching at approximately shore-normal, that is, the angle of wave approach is at 90° to the general angle of the coastline. Further, and as follows from this shore normal wave approach, there is relatively limited longshore transport otherwise these features would tend to be infilled and flattened. That these features are less prominent at the site is hypothesised to be due to a greater shadowing of the southern end of the Ōmāpere embayment to the offshore wave energy entering through the Harbour mouth.



Figure 3.4.1: Beach cusp formations

### 3.5 Coastal Erosion

At a wider Harbour level, the morphology and areas of erosion is the result of a complex interplay between the effects of tidal flows, waves, and sediment movement. Over time, eroding coastlines tend to become orientated in response to the dominant wave approach, and the shape of the Ōmāpere embayment (Figure 3.5a) suggests a response to the westerly wave entering the mouth of the harbour and propagating directly across the harbour basin. The ebb tidal currents in the Harbour are also likely to be capable of transporting sand off-site, once mobilised by wave energy. The morphology of high steep dune scarps along the embayment suggests a coastline undergoing progressive retreat.

Areas of erosion were also present further north, along the Opononi coastline, which is sheltered from the westerly wave environment. This erosion is likely driven by other factors, including potentially areas of historic reclamation during formation of State Highway 12 in close proximity to the coastline.





Also evident is a large volume of sand on the eastern face of the northern arm of the Harbour, assumed to have been deposited by aeolian transport from the predominant wind. There is evidence of relatively extensive forestry activity to the northern sandspit, which has the potential to affect the sediment balance in the harbour. A change in the supply of sediment to the beach system, leading to lower sand levels more often, may also be driving the progressive retreat of the dune.



Figure 3.5a: Wider harbour coastline

The bare face of the scarp at the site indicates this has been retreating too rapidly for vegetation to establish. The unconsolidated/poorly consolidated sediments comprising the dune are readily eroded by wave action, which based on foreshore contours appears to be only acting at the toe of the dune. In addition to the sandy sediments exposed at the base of the scarp, approximately half way up the dune scarp are older more consolidated sediments (Photograph 3.5a), which are not typically expected in the equilibrium profile of a sandy beach. This is evidence the erosion is progressive rather than part of a natural fluctuation.

The general erosive model for these dune coastlines is the wave action at the toe of the dune scarp erodes and transports these sediments, leaving the upper dune over-steep and prone to failure. This material fails with the talus deposited on the foreshore. This material provides



temporary support to the scarp, however it will tend to be reasonably rapidly eroded once again leaving the toe exposed to wave attack. There is the added complication at the site of the fluvial impacts from the river to the south. The outlet of the river will tend to migrate over time with sand levels on the beach; at times it will angle more to the south away from the site and this is evident in historic aerials, however at the time of the site visit (November 2019, Photograph 3.5b) it was travelling north along the face of the dunes and providing an additional source of scour at the base of the dune scarp. The river scour also reduces the dune height at the upper foreshore, enabling more frequent runup scour. The extent of the erosion present on the cliffs to the north, outside the area of effect of the river scour, indicates that there are two drivers to cliff retreat and it is not purely a fluvial process occurring when the river flows are discharging along the base of the dunes.



**Photograph 3.5a: Dune scarp seaward of No 266 SH12**



**Photograph 3.5b: Dune scarp seaward of No 264 showing older more consolidated dune sediments**

A potential source of retreat data is historic aerial imagery. However, this requires that retreat be of a scale significant enough to be measurable beyond the margins of error involved in the georectification process. Nine images were obtained over a time period from 1942 – 2019, which provides nearly 80 years of historical data. These images were georectified, and then a seaward line of vegetation marked on each image. Comparing the change in this line between images allows interpretation of the change in coastline position over this period (Figure 3.5b). The trends in the data show that along the coastline to the north of the site, where this is remote from the fluvial influence of the river outlet, historic erosion rate is approximately 0.4m/yr. To the south, where there is a combination of wave driven and fluvial erosion, historic erosion rate is approximately 0.5m/yr. With the exception of a period of accretion in the main dune face between 1942-1968, the remainder of the mapped coastlines are showing progressive retreat. This is consistent with observations of the dune face made above. These measured retreats are similar to the 0.3m/yr quoted in the assessment of historic shoreline positions along the beaches of the Omapere / Opononi coastline (Tonkin & Taylor, 2017).





Figure 3.5b: Coastal vegetation lines from historic aerial imagery

The trend of progressive retreat in the historic aerial data is also set out in the Coastal Erosion Hazard Zone Assessment completed by NRC (Tonkin & Taylor, 2017). This reporting used both historic aerals and beach profile data to predict potential future shoreline positions. Two Coastal Erosion Hazard Zones (CEHZ's) were defined in this reporting:

- CEHZ1 – Predicted future shoreline at 2065 with a 66% probability of being exceeded, considered to be a 'likely' CEHZ
- CEHZ2 – Predicted future shoreline at 2115 with a 5% probability of being exceeded, considered to be a 'potential' CEHZ

These CEHZ lines for the subject sites are shown below (Figure 3.5c). As can be seen, both dwellings are predicted to be significantly threatened by 2065, with the coastline predicted to have retreated behind the dwellings by 2115. These predictions are consistent with the erosion scarp at the site, and the erosion being experienced at present being a progressive retreat of the coastline rather than natural fluctuations of a beach around an equilibrium profile.



Figure 3.5c: CEHZ 1 and 2 with respect to the subject properties, plotted from NRC GIS

### 3.6 Sea Level Rise

The Ministry for the Environment (MfE) guidance on sea-level rise (December 2017) adopts a risk-based approach to coastal development, with a range of sea-level rise values specified depending on the type of development proposed. It sets out the sea-level rise projection scenarios to 2150, which cover a range of possible future sea levels:

- A low emissions, effective mitigation scenario (RCP 2.6)
- An intermediate-low emissions scenario (RCP 4.5)
- A high emissions, no mitigation scenario (RCP 8.5)
- A higher, more extreme H+ scenario (RCP 8.5 H+), for stress-testing adaptation plans / major new development at the coast

These scenarios and the resultant sea level projections are shown below (Figure 3.6).



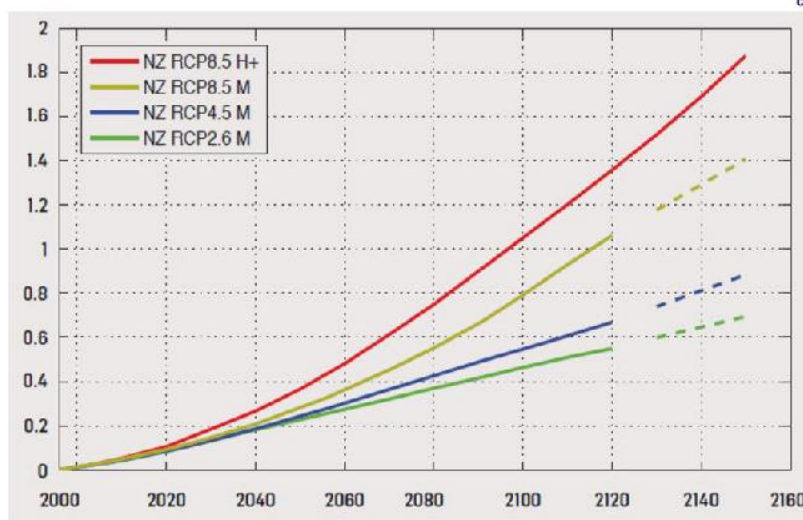


Figure 3.6: Sea-level rise projections for various Concentration Pathways – ex MfE, 2017

The MfE guidance defines Asset Category C as comprising “*land-use planning controls for existing coastal development and assets planning*”. It recommends a transitional response of 1.0m of sea-level rise for the next 100 years out to 2120. This is in accordance with the RCP8.5 emissions scenario, which is considered sufficiently precautionary.

The maximum period for a Coastal Permit Resource Consent is 35 years. Based on using the RCP 8.5 emissions scenarios, this would suggest that allowance for a sea-level rise of 300-400mm over the Consent Period of the structure would be in accordance with these guidelines. However, consideration is also made of the potential effects of sea level rise over the 100-year time scale, and this is discussed further in Section 8.5.2.



## 4.0 Proposal

### 4.1 Rock Riprap Seawall

A new engineered rock riprap seawall is proposed, extending approximately 142m (Figure 4.1a) along the base of the dune scarp and river bank to the south. There are two types of seawall proposed, which differ in their primary function. These are river bank armouring (Type 1) and dune toe protection (Type 2). These are discussed in more detail below.

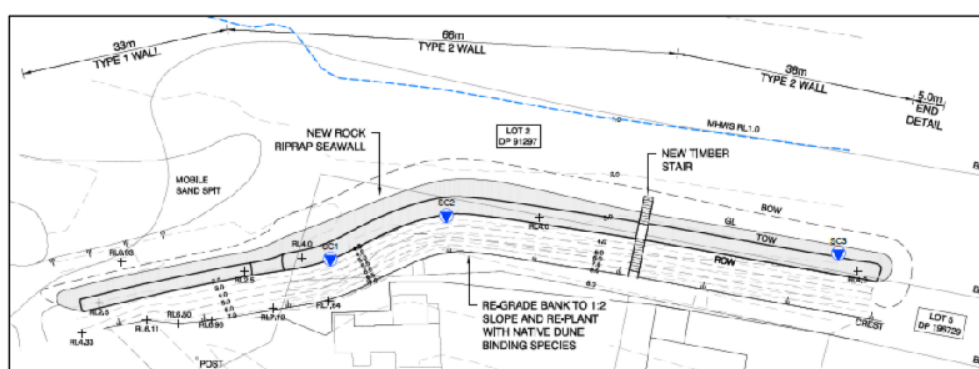


Figure 4.1a: Layout Plan of new seawall

#### Type 1 Wall:

This section of wall is approximately 33m in length and is located along the bank of the river, south of the property at 266 SH 12. The intent of the wall in this location is to prevent further erosion of the river bank, and protect the main wall face from outflanking by the river flows. As a result a lesser specification armour (than the main wall face, see Type 2 below) is suitable in this location.

The wall will comprise a single armour layer of imported 600-800mm rock, with an underlayer comprising imported 200-300mm rock, and a geotextile fines barrier. A typical section is shown below (Figure 4.1b). The wall crest is at RL 2.5, with the base of the wall extending 500mm into the underlying riverbed to approximately RL 0.5.

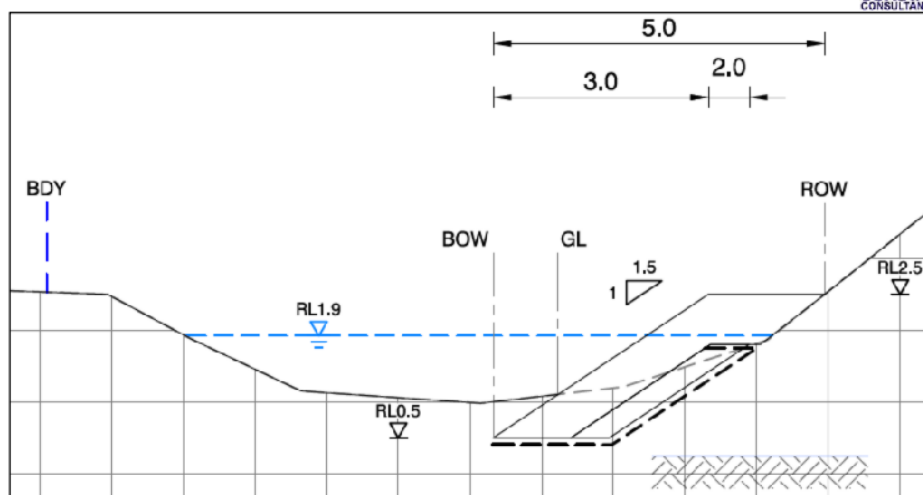


Figure 4.2b: Typical section through Type 1 wall at riverbank

#### Type 2 Wall:

This section of wall is approximately 109m long and is to armour the toe of the main dune scarp, seaward of the properties at No 266 and No 264. The wall will comprise a double armour layer of imported 600-800mm rock, a double underlayer of 200-300mm rock, and a geotextile (Figure 4.2c). It will be founded with a toe detail approximately 500mm into underlying harder material, which varies across the site from RL 0 – 1.0. Crest height of the wall is RL 4.0, with the face of the wall sloping at 1(vertical):1.5(horizontal).

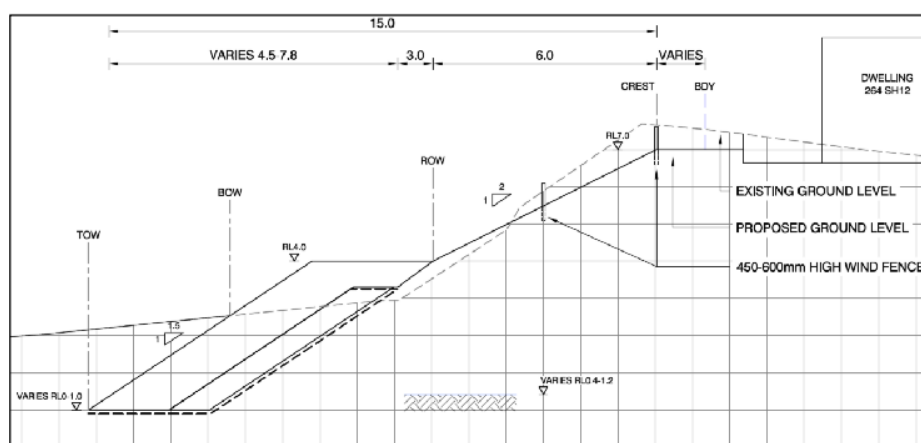


Figure 4.2c: Typical section through Type 2 wall



#### 4.2 Timber Stair

A 12.5m long x 1.5m wide timber stairway is proposed to provide access from the Applicant's properties to the foreshore. It will be placed on the boundary between No 264 and No 266.

The structure will consist of 2 flights with a central landing (Figure 4.2), with 170mm risers and 310mm treads. The stair will be supported on timber piles and run perpendicular to the coastal margin. The stair will be placed over the top of the new rock wall, and will necessitate placement of some foundation piles through the underlying geotextile for the seawall. To prevent this causing issues with loss of fines the likely methodology will be to place stair piles following placement of the geotextile, prior to the armour rock. This will allow small holes to be cut in a continuous geotextile layer to allow pile placement.

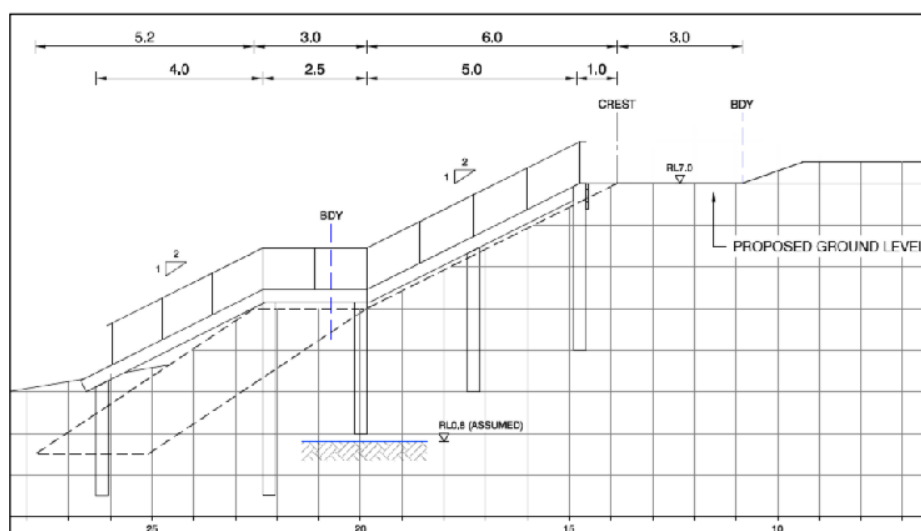


Figure 4.2: Typical section through Type 2 wall

#### 4.3 Earthworks

Following construction of the seawall, the over-steep dune scarp above the wall will be lowered and re-graded to allow establishment of dune planting. This will comprise grading the dune from RL 4.0 at the seawall crest, at a 1(vert):2(horiz) slope, up to RL 7.0 at the dune crest. This material will be re-distributed to the foreshore below the new seawall. Apart from some dune sands at the upper cliff, the majority of the material will comprise cemented sand material (as can be



seen in Photograph 3.5b). This material will be track rolled to assist in breaking it down into smaller sand particles for better integration with the sand of the foreshore. This process evidently occurs naturally as this material has been undergoing erosion, and no evidence of eroded blocks remaining in situ for long periods of time has been seen on site.

A summary of the indicative cut and fill areas and volumes is provided below (Table 4.3). These volumes are provided for an indication of scale only, as none of this material will be removed off-site.

| Zone                      | Area (m <sup>2</sup> ) | Cut (m <sup>3</sup> ) | Fill (m <sup>3</sup> ) | Net (m <sup>3</sup> ) |
|---------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| Conservation<br>(Reserve) | 700                    | 530                   | 220                    | 310 cut               |
| Residential               | 50                     | 10                    | 20                     | 10 fill               |
| Total                     | 750                    | 540                   | 240                    | 300 cut               |

Table 4.3: Summary table for earthworks to upper dune

#### 4.4 Dune Revegetation

Existing dune vegetation is generally sparse, and this will be removed by the re-grading outlined above. Extensive re-vegetation of the re-graded dune is proposed, over an area of 720m<sup>2</sup> (Figure 4.4a, labelled 'A') from the top of the seawall to the dune crest, comprising the planting of sand-binding dune species spinifex (*Spinifex Sericeus*) and pīngao (*Ficinia Spiralis*). Once established these species will assist in sand retention on the upper dune, and reduce the risk of dune blowouts above the seawall. Rear of the dune crest, planting on the back dune (labelled 'B') will comprise a 1.5m wide strip of bracken (*Pteridium Esculentum*) and Pohuehue (*Muehlenbeckia Complexa*), covering 180m<sup>2</sup> of the site.



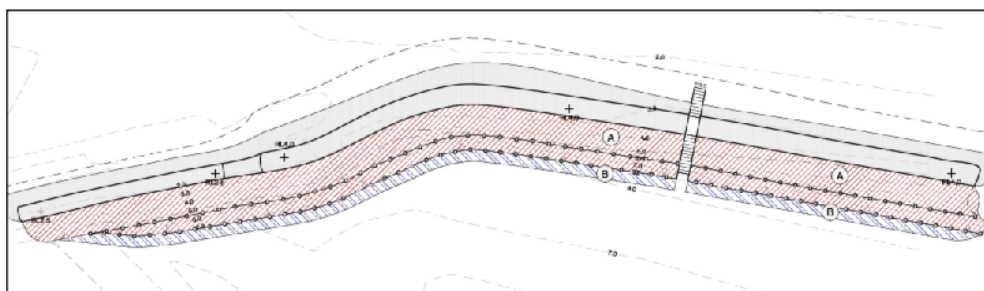


Figure 4.4a: Layout plan of proposed vegetation and wind fences

To assist in establishment of the dune planting, two lines of wind fencing are proposed. One line of fencing will be located approximately half-way up the slope above the seawall, with the second line of fencing located at the dune crest. The fencing will comprise 100Ø x 1.2m timber posts at 2.0m centres, founded approximately 600mm below ground, with sand-coloured wind cloth running between the piles (Figure 4.4b).

The fencing will remain in place until the Spinifex and Pīngao have established and formed a suitable ground cover to the slope. This is estimated to be approximately 2-5 years.

It is proposed that maintenance conditions be imposed on the planting, with the format of this as follows (or similar):

*“Within the first planting season following the completion of all earthworks, planting as shown on the Davis Coastal Consultants ‘Planting Plan’ File No 1918 / Sheet No 07 / Rev – dated 12.08.2020 will be undertaken. Following this all new plantings shall be maintained for a minimum of three years and any new plantings that die or decline over this three year period shall be replaced. The replacement plants shall be of the same species, grade and size as the original specimens and planted no later than the following planting season (May to August)”.*

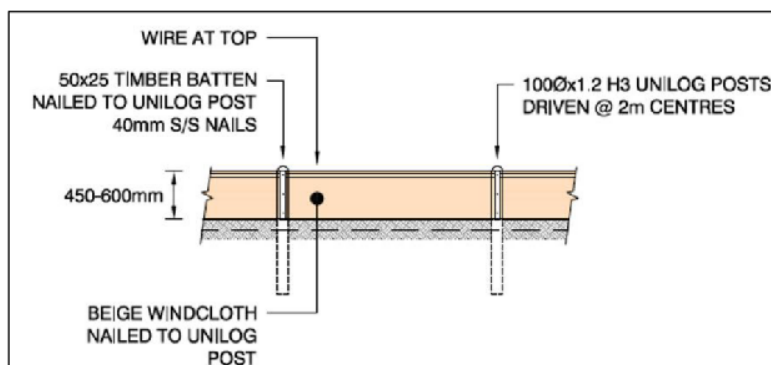


Figure 4.4b: Proposed wind fence typical detail

#### 4.5 Construction Access and Methodology

Access to the CMA will be obtained using a landward access across the Applicant's property at No 266. A Contractor's Area will be set up at 266 SH12, at the head of the cliffs, with all rock delivered to site stored in this location.

The expected construction methodology for the works is:

- Establish excavator (12-15t) to site and establish fenced compound at 266 SH12 (see Figure 4.5), at the head of the cliffs
- Armour rock to be delivered to site via truck and placed within temporary storage area
- Form construction access to CMA down dune scarp as shown, orientating the access away from the predominant SW wind to reduce risk of blowout during construction
- Excavator to access and exit CMA using this access, with the machine to be removed from the CMA prior to the subsequent high tide
- Work to construct the riprap wall will likely be undertaken in sections, with exposure of the bank limited to the extent of wall able to be completed in a tidal cycle
- Excavate existing beach sand down to foundation level, shape toe of dune to design slope
- Place geotextile, followed by the underlayer(s) and armour layer(s)
- Complete each section, before starting new section, leaving geotextile extending past placed rock to allow for overlap between geotextile sheets



- At a minimum geotextile will be placed over any exposed backshore material prior to the subsequent high tide
- Piling for timber stairs to be undertaken before rock is placed, through geotextile
- Piles will be drilled and driven, not concreted
- Timber stairs to be built following rock placement
- Shape dune above seawall following seawall construction, with wind fencing installed immediately following works. Planting to be undertaken in the first planting season following wall construction



Figure 4.5: Extent of contractor's area and access

#### 4.6 Extent of Consent

The proposed structures are to be covered under two separate Resource Consents. The extent of the structures covered by each Consent is set out below (Table 4.6, Figure 4.6).

In general, the Owners of each property will hold Consent for all structures located directly adjacent their property boundaries on the seaward land. Where the wall extends onto land adjacent neighbouring properties at 268 and 270 SH12, the Applicant at 266 SH12 will hold Consent for this section of wall. Boundary marks will be placed on the crest of the seawall by a Registered Surveyor following completion of works to define the extent of Consent.



| Property | Extent of Structures  |
|----------|---|
| 264 SH12 | 43m length seawall to RL4.0, Part Share of Timber Stair                               |
| 266 SH12 | 66m length seawall to RL4.0, 33m length seawall to RL 2.5, Part Share of Timber Stair |

Table 4.6: Extent of Consent

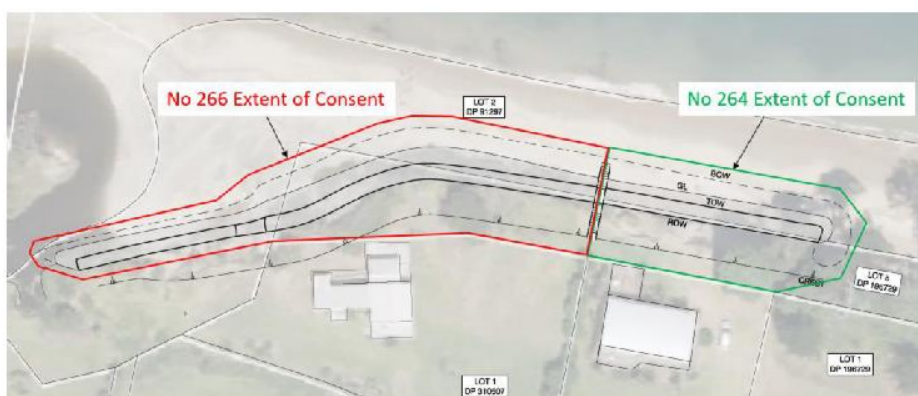


Figure 4.6: Indicative extent of Consent for each Applicant



## 5.0 Options Assessment

### 5.1 Overview

The options considered comprise whether armouring should be placed or not, whether 'soft engineering' solutions might be appropriate, and the type of armouring.

### 5.2 *Do Nothing – Allow Retreat of the Coastline*

When considering a proposal for any form of coastal protection structure, it is a statutory requirement that the option to 'Do Nothing' and allow the coastline to retreat naturally is considered.

The morphology of the steep dune scarp at the site, with older more consolidated sediments exposed, is indicative of a coastline undergoing progressive retreat. This is confirmed by the trend in the historic aerial images, and also the predicted future coastline positions in the NRC's erosion hazard modelling.

The process of erosion and retreat of coastal cliffs is a natural process. However, there is valuable coastal land and development at the head of the cliffs. The threat this ongoing retreat poses to property is prompting measures to attempt to prevent this ongoing retreat elsewhere on the coastline – see for example the NZTA seawall protecting the State Highway (2km north of the site).

It is also understood from preliminary consultation with the local hapū management committee that ongoing erosion of the riverbank on the northern side of the river occasionally releases koiwi (human remains) from a historic burial site (wāhi tapu) in this area. This may continue to occur should ongoing retreat and erosion of this area be unaddressed.

Assuming the 'Do Nothing' option is adopted, the following issues are considered likely:

- Loss of the dwelling at No 266 SH12 within the next 50 years
- Threatening of the dwelling at No 264 within the next 50 years





This option would likely require both Applicants to re-locate the existing dwellings to a landward location, likely landward of the CEHZ2 2115 hazard line. Were this a beach in dynamic equilibrium, and the observed erosion considered to be a temporary state, there would be a much stronger argument for a managed re-alignment of the dwellings. The typical approach on these coastlines is to define the area of fluctuation based on historic data, make allowances for future retreat due to potentially increased erosion due to sea-level rise, allow an additional buffer, and set dwellings landward of that point. In part that work has been done by the defining of these Hazard Zones. However, this would not address the issue of the progressively retreating coastline. At some point in the future, the property owners would later be presented with the same issues they are currently facing, and a decision would again need to be made about the protection of the sections. The Applicants are in effect making that decision at this point, prior to the loss of a large amount of their property. Therefore, relocation is not considered as a practicable long-term management option.

The existing NZTA seawall to the north demonstrates that the management approach at a government level to the threatening of major infrastructure on this coastline will be to provide armouring to protect these assets, as opposed to re-locating them landward. North of the site approximately 300m (Figure 5.2), there are places where the retreating coastal scarp is within 25m of State Highway 12. Based on the erosion rates measured earlier, and assuming no increase in erosion rate due to sea-level rise, this road will be threatened by the retreating cliffline within approximately 50 years. Therefore, over this time period the extent of armouring on the subject coastline is expected to increase significantly.

Given the proximity of the cliff at site to the Applicant's dwellings, and the progressive erosion observed, the option to 'Do Nothing' is not considered to be practicable, and is not an acceptable option for the property owners. Therefore, there is a requirement to address the retreating coastal cliff.



Figure 5.2: Proximity of dune scarp to SH12 300m north of site

### 5.3 'Soft' Protection Solutions

Soft engineering options including beach renourishment and planting were also considered when determining an appropriate response to a coastal hazard threat.

The placement of sand renourishment as an erosion response would typically involve the importing of sand and placement of this material against the dune scarp. This placed sand would provide a temporary barrier to the dune scarp, and planting could be sought to be established to retain it in position. However due to the relatively wide nature of the subject embayment, this material would be located in an artificially seaward position than the adjacent un-nourished coastline. Due to wave action it is likely that it would be preferentially remobilised and then



transported by tidal currents to the wider beach system. The speed at which this would occur would be dependent on the frequency of storms and high tide events, however once transported erosion of the dune scarp would continue. Typically private property owners do not possess the resources to continually move sand as a 'soft' engineering response, and it is considered this management option is not practicable.

The placement of groynes as 'headland' control structures would likely be required to assist in retention of the new renourished material. At a minimum two groynes would be required, one to train river flows at the western end of the site and one at the eastern end of the site (seaward of No 264). These would need to be reasonably large shore-perpendicular structures approximately 1m above beach level would form an impediment to the easy pedestrian access across the beach face. Whilst the net direction of longshore transport is not known at the site, there is the potential for interruption of longshore transport with these structures, which could result in an unacceptable increase in erosion on the adjacent shoreline to the north or south. In addition, this type of response to the erosion hazard is not being adopted elsewhere on the coastline and accordingly it could be considered out of step with the 'character' of the coastline.

Planting of dunes with native sand-binding species helps to retain sand within planted areas, protecting the dunes from blow-outs and providing a buffer to erosion during storm events. Sand-binding species such as Spinifex and Pīngao are particularly useful at growing the dune toe in areas of dune fluctuation. However, they are unlikely to be similarly successful on a retreating coast. Due to the height of the dune scarp, planting would need to be undertaken in conjunction with the renourishment (and groynes), rather than being an appropriate solution by itself to address the progressive erosion. Planting of any disturbed dune areas is to be undertaken as part of the proposal but cannot be considered a suitable erosion mitigation option on its own.

#### **5.4 Hard Protection Armouring Discussion**

It is evident that retreat of the coastal dune is driven by the action of erosion processes at the toe of the bank. It has been demonstrated above that the option to 'Do Nothing' is not appropriate given the progressive nature of the retreat, and also that 'softer' engineering measures such as renourishment or planting are not appropriate on their own. Accordingly, to address the erosion some form of toe armouring is required.



All of the walls on the subject coastline, with the exception of the timber wall with rock toe to the north, are rock riprap walls. The construction of a rock riprap seawall on a relatively remote coastline such as that at Omapere in the Hokianga Harbour has the following advantages:

- The rock for the wall is a relatively easy construction material to source, with a number of potential quarries in reasonably close proximity to the site
- The construction techniques are relatively simple, with a quality wall able to be constructed by a relatively inexperienced contractor provided sufficient engineer supervision is available
- The rock wall is a relatively flexible structure, able to accommodate slow settling or lowering of the underlying firmer material without risking failure
- It is a similar type of structure to the existing types of seawall on the coastline
- The rock wall can be readily extended along the riverbank edge to provide protection from these flows
- Providing there is a suitable source of rock in proximity to the site, these type of seawall are relatively cost effective when undertaking a reasonable length of wall (such as that proposed)

Alternative styles of armouring are not considered to provide any additional benefit and accordingly a riprap wall is proposed at the site.



## **6.0 Statutory Assessment**

### **6.1 Resource Management Act 1991**

#### **6.1.1 Section 88 of the RMA**

Pursuant to Section 88 of the RMA, an application for Resource Consent shall include an assessment of any actual or potential effects that the activity may have on the environment, and the ways in which any adverse effects would be avoided, remedied or mitigated.

Section 88 stipulates that an assessment of effects shall be of a detail that corresponds with the scale and significance of the actual or potential effects that the activity may have on the environment and shall be prepared in accordance with the Fourth Schedule. An assessment of the effects of the proposal is contained within Section 8.0 of this report.

#### **6.1.2 Reserve Land and Marine and Coastal Area Act 2011 Discussion**

The subject residential properties are located landward of two Reserve parcels, being Lot 5 DP196729 (landward) and Lot 2 DP 91297 (seaward). Part 2 Section 11(4) of the Marine and Coastal Area Act 2011 sets out that

*“Whenever, after the commencement of this Act, whether as a result of erosion or other natural occurrence, any land owned by the Crown or a local authority becomes part of the common marine and coastal area, the title of the Crown or the local authority as owner of that land is, by this section, divested...”*

Pursuant to this Section, whenever land that is part of these Reserves becomes ‘part of the common marine and coastal area’, that is, becomes inundated below MHWS, then this part of the title is divested and it permanently becomes CMCA. This interpretation has been discussed previously with FNDC (see Appendix E). They provided the following comment:

*“Lot 2 DP 91297 is completely under water and is now part of the Common Marine and Coastal Area. The title is completely divested.”*





*Lot 5 DP 196729 is partially under water and that portion is lost to the Common Marine and Coastal Area. The title is divested for that portion of land now below MHWS" (Kay Meekings, Property Legalisation Officer, email comms 05.08.2019)*

This interpretation has been shown below (Figure 6.1.2). It is confirmed that it is likely that during times of low sand level the seaward Reserve lot is below MHWS and accordingly it is now CMCA. During these times of low sand level, if MHWS was at the base of the dune scarp part of Lot 5 DP 196729 would also therefore be divested. This is most evident seaward in the portion of Reserve seaward of the dwelling at Lot 1 DP 310507. However, the majority of the Reserve land in Lot 5 DP 196729 remains above MHWS and is still held in title.



Figure 6.1.2: Indicative Reserve land seaward of properties

This has the following implications for the subject proposal:

- Landowner Approval (in addition to Resource Consent) must be sought from FNDC for the extent of seawall and stair access located on Lot 5 DP 196729

This process has been initiated in conjunction with lodging the Consent.



### 6.1.3 Extent of CMA and MHWS Discussion

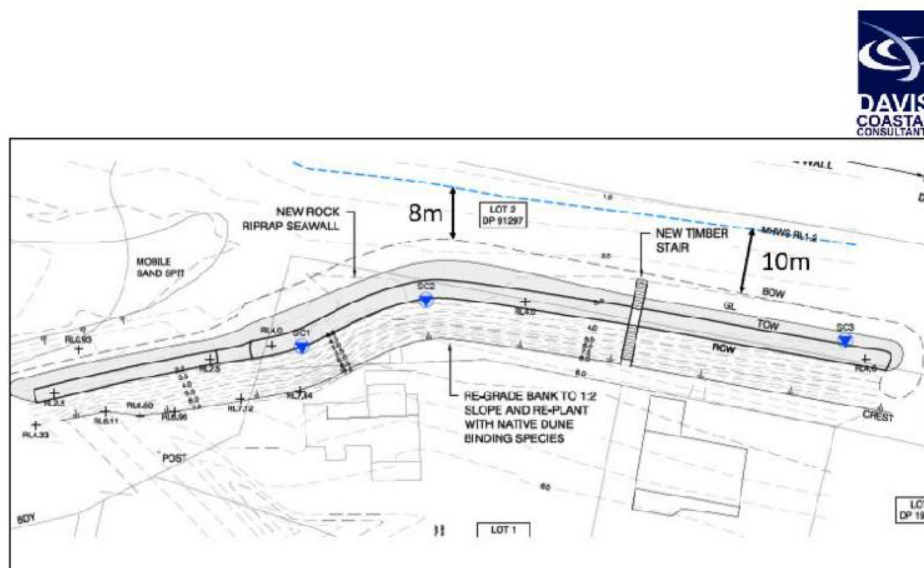
The line of MHWS is defined in the Act as the statutory boundary of the CMA. Uses and Activities are subject to Rules and Plans for the CMA up to the line of MHWS, and terrestrial Rules and Plans landward of that line. Defining the extent of the CMA at the site is important as it determines the relevant infringements for the structure. The Act defines the CMA as being:

*“the foreshore, seabed, and coastal water, and the air space above the water ...  
(b) of which the landward boundary is the line of mean high water springs...”*

On sandy beaches, where the level of the beach is in constant flux, this can result in varying positions of MHWS (and the CMA) over time. As noted in Baker and Watkins (1991), *“from a beach monitoring survey carried out over a 12 month period at Takapuna and Milford Beaches in Auckland, which cannot be classed as fully exposed, it was found that the position of MHWM typically varied by 9 metres and at one position by 17.5 metres due to changes in the beach profile”*.

A survey of the site was undertaken in September 2019. Based on the MHWS level provided by LINZ at Ōmāpere (1.2 MSL), and the sand levels at the time of this survey, MHWS was located approximately 8-10m seaward of the toe of the wall (Figure 6.1.3), meaning the wall is outside the CMA. Conversely, if a survey was undertaken at a time of lower sand level, part of the wall could be located inside the CMA. However, it is important to define a CMA location in order to determine the relevant Plans for assessment.

It is proposed to adopt the surveyed level of MHWS (in September 2019) as the most current data on CMA location, and define the relevant Plans on this basis.



**Figure 6.1.3: Location of MHWS seaward of wall**

This has the following implications for the subject proposal:

- The Northland Regional Plan – Coastal is not relevant, as the site is above MHWS
- The Far North District Plan is the primary relevant Plan requiring consideration
- The Northland Regional Soil and Water Plan requires consideration
- The Proposed Regional Plan for Northland – Appeals Version requires consideration
- Consultation under the Marine and Coastal Area Act (2011) is not required (see Section 6.2)

#### 6.1.4 Section 104 of the RMA

The application is subject to an assessment under Section 104 and Part 2. Section 104 lists those matters to which the Council shall have regard and provides, in particular, that:

- (1) When considering an application for resource consent and any submissions received, the consent authority... must have regard to –
- (a) Any actual and potential effects on the environment of allowing the activity;  
and
  - (b) Any relevant provisions of –
    - (i) A national policy statement:
    - (ii) A New Zealand coastal policy statement: (not relevant)



- (iii) A regional policy statement or proposed regional policy statement;*
- (iv) A plan or proposed plan; and*
- (c) Any other matters the Consent Authority considers relevant and reasonably necessary to determine the application.*
- (d) When forming an opinion for the purposes of subsection (1)(a), a Consent Authority may disregard an adverse effect of the activity on the environment if the plan permits an activity with that effect...*

This report considers the matters set out in Part 2 of the RMA, and assesses the application against the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement (NZCPS), and the relevant parts of the Northland Regional Policy Statement. The application has also been considered with respect to the detailed tests in the Northland Regional Soil and Water Plan, and the Proposed Northland Regional Plan – Appeals Version. Additionally, an Assessment of Environmental Effects is undertaken in Section 8.0.

On the basis of this assessment, it was determined that the adverse effects on the environment will be minor and no more than minor. In addition, it was also demonstrated that the application is not contrary to the Objectives and Policies of all the relevant Plans.

#### **6.1.5 Part 2 Assessment**

In the context of this application for a Land Use Consent, where the Objectives and Policies of the Regional Plan was prepared having regard to Part 2 of the RMA, it can be assumed they capture all relevant planning considerations. These Plans also provide a clear framework for assessing all relevant and potential effects, and there is therefore no need to go beyond these provisions and look to Part 2. An assessment against Part 2 would not add anything to the evaluative exercise.

#### **6.1.6 Consents Sought**

This application for Resource Consent is required under the Resource Management Act 1991. Section 9 of the Act places restrictions on the use of land.

#### Land-Use Consent – Section 9



The Act states that under Section 9 (2) that:

*"No person may use land in a manner that contravenes a regional rule unless the use –  
(a) Is expressly allowed by a resource consent..."*

The works contravene rules relating to land disturbance, hard protection structures, natural hazards and building within identified setbacks and management zones within the Regional Plan. Therefore, Resource Consent is sought to undertake these works under Sections 9 (2) of the RMA.

#### **6.1.7 Section 95A-95E - Notification Assessment – Attached as Appendix B**

A full notification is undertaken in Appendix B, with the result summarised below.

It is considered that the proposal is able to be processed on a non-notified basis, without the requirement for limited notification on any person, or public notification on the wider community, because:

- The proposal will have less than minor adverse effects on the environment, including visual amenity or coastal character effects and effects on coastal processes;
- No persons will be adversely affected by the proposal, having regard to the scope of the proposed works and the measuring of these works against the tests provided in the relevant planning documents
- The primary adjacent properties to the works are owned by the Applicants who are seeking to provide a cohesive approach to addressing the erosion issue at the site
- The potential effects on other adjacent neighbours (not party to the application) are less than minor
- The proposal is not considered to give rise to any special circumstances that would warrant public notification.





### 6.1.8 Section 221 Consent Notice on Certificate of Title

In June 2000, a subdivision was undertaken that involved the creation of six new lots (Figure 6.1.8). Of these, one is Esplanade Reserve (Lot 5 DP 196729) and one is an Accessway (Lot 6 DP 196729). As part of this subdivision, a Consent Notice was issued by the Far North District Council pursuant to Section 221 of the RMA 1991.

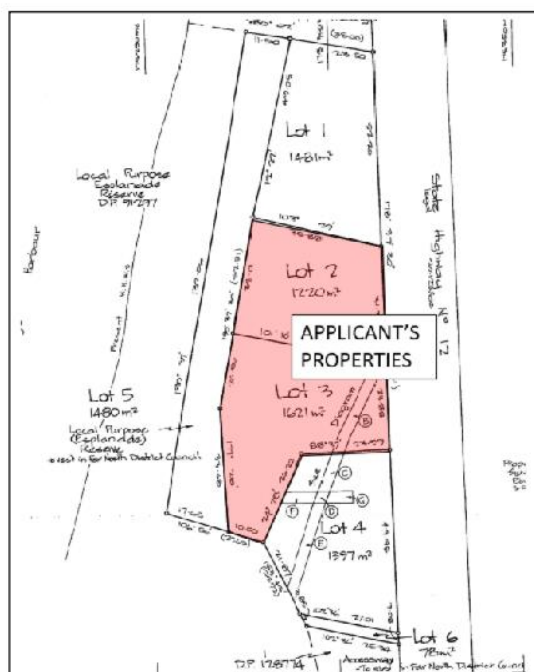


Figure 6.1.8: Subdivision Plan at time of Consent Notice (2000)

This Consent Notice sets out the following;

- *"Any building erected is to be re-locatable for coastal hazard reasons*
- *No buildings shall be erected closer than 40 metres from mean high water springs as shown on the Haigh Consultants report dated 18 December 1996.*
- *Any dwelling erected will be made subject to section 36 of the Building Act 1991 stating that Council will accept no liability for any loss or damage to any building as part of any adverse coastal process*
- *Parts of the sites may contain fill and require specific engineering design for foundations"*



The approach to addressing the potential coastal hazard at the site, at the time of subdivision, was to place this notice on the title of the subdivided lots. This was with the aim of ensuring that any new building would be located outside the area of the natural hazard, which at this point was taken to be *"40 metres from mean highwater springs"* (per Haigh Consultants, 18 December 2006).

This is a valid approach to mitigating the hazard, which would require the Applicants to re-locate their dwellings landward outside the hazard zone, as they become threatened by ongoing retreat of the coastal dune. In the case of No 264 the dwelling predates the subdivision. No provision has been made to make this a relocatable building. However as discussed above (Section 5.1), the progressive retreat of the coastal dune will continue and this will result in a progressive loss of amenity (and coastal property) for the Applicants. This is considered by the Applicants to be an unacceptable management approach and accordingly they are seeking an alternative approach to mitigate this hazard.

This alternative approach is to seek to make adequate provision to *"protect the land, building work, or other property...from the natural hazard"* (Section 71 of the Building Act 2004, which superceded the Building Act 1991 and updated the natural hazard provisions to Sections 71-72).

This will be accomplished through provision of the toe protection wall, re-shaping to the over-steep upper dune scarp, and replanting with native sand binding species.

## **6.2 Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011**

The MACA was passed in 2011, and repealed the Foreshore and Seabed Act 2004. The MACA created a no-ownership regime over the CMCA and introduced mechanisms to recognise customary rights of Māori in that area. These mechanisms include 'protected customary rights' (PCR's) and 'customary marine title' (CMT).

Pursuant to Section 62 of the Act, in the period before the Crown has determined whether an application for CMT is successful, any applicant for Resource Consent is required to notify and seek the views of an applicant for CMT in the relevant area. However, as discussed earlier (Section 6.1.1), the location of the CMA (and therefore the CMCA) has been defined seaward of the proposal. Accordingly, no consultation has been undertaken with MACA Applicants.



### **6.3 New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement (NZCPS)**

The purpose of the NZCPS is to state Policies in order to achieve the purpose of the RMA, in relation to the coastal environment of New Zealand. The proposal is considered to be consistent with the relevant NZCPS Objectives and Policies listed below:

*Objective 2 - To preserve the natural character of the coastal environment and protect natural features and landscape values through:*

- *recognising the characteristics and qualities that contribute to natural character,*
- *natural features and landscape values and their location and distribution;*
- *identifying those areas where various forms of subdivision, use, and development would be inappropriate and protecting them from such activities; and*
- *encouraging restoration of the coastal environment.*

Objective 2 seeks the preservation of Natural Character in the coastal environment. The effect of the proposal on the Natural Character of the coastline is assessed in Section 8.1. There is the potential for tension to occur between this Objective and the desire of the Applicants to protect their property from ongoing cliff retreat.

Whilst there are no seawall structures immediately adjacent to the proposed structure, along the wider coastline there are numerous examples of armouring being undertaken to protect landward development (see Section 2.4). As noted above, the proximity of State Highway 12 to the retreating coastline has resulted in construction of a significant length of rock riprap armouring approximately 1km north of the site. Observation of additional areas inbetween this armouring and the site where erosion is ongoing (and in reasonable proximity to the Highway) indicate additional armouring to protect this major road is likely in the future.

Subdivision of the site has already occurred. With the inferred Consent decision the sites are not land where subdivision, development and use for residential housing is inappropriate.

The establishment of toe armouring at the site will allow the re-vegetation of the upper dune (approximately half the total dune height) with native dune binding species. This is considered a positive outcome for the Character of the site.



*Objective 5 – To ensure that coastal hazard risks taking account of climate change, are managed by:*

- *locating new development away from areas prone to such risks;*
- *considering responses, including managed retreat, for existing development in this situation*
- *protecting or restoring natural defences to coastal hazards*

The properties are existing dwellings and sites, and as such there is not the opportunity of locating this development away from the area at risk of erosion. The potential relocation of the dwellings at threat has been considered in Section 5.0, however due to the progressive erosion and loss of amenity that this would require, this option is highly undesirable to the Applicants.

The use of 'softer' engineering solutions such as re-nourishment would require additional control structures to maintain it in position. The re-grading of the upper bank and establishment of dune vegetation planting will minimise the risk of dune blowouts in the upper dune, and will assist in binding sand above the wall. However planting alone will not be sufficient to address the eroding dune.

Accordingly, the proposal is considered not to be inconsistent with this Objective, due to the constraints of the site and wider coastal management approach that is being applied along the Ōmāpere / Opononi coastline.

*Objective 6 – To enable people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural wellbeing and their health and safety, through subdivision, use and development, recognising that:*

- *the protection of the values of the coastal environment does not preclude use and development in appropriate places and forms, and within appropriate limits;*
- *some uses and developments which depend upon the use of natural and physical resources in the coastal environment are important to the social, economic and cultural wellbeing of people and communities;*



- *functionally some uses and developments can only be located on the coast or in the coastal marine area...*

The proposed seawall has a functional need to be located within the coastal environment, in order to provide the armouring required to prevent ongoing erosion of the bank. There is no alternative more landward alignment for the wall, given steep landward dune and that dune retreat is being driven by erosion of the dune toe.

Policy 27 of the NZCPS addresses coastal hazards and provides guidance on hard protection structures:

*1. In areas of significant existing development likely to be affected by coastal hazards, the range of options for reducing coastal hazard risk that should be assessed includes:*

- a. promoting and identifying long-term sustainable risk reduction approaches including the relocation or removal of existing development or structures at risk;*
- b. identifying the consequences of potential strategic options relative to the option of "do-nothing";*
- c. recognising that hard protection structures may be the only practical means to protect existing infrastructure of national or regional importance, to sustain the potential of built physical resources to meet the reasonably foreseeable needs of future generations;*
- d. recognising and considering the environmental and social costs of permitting hard protection structures to protect private property; and*
- e. identifying and planning for transition mechanisms and timeframes for moving to more sustainable approaches.*

*2. In evaluating options under (1):*

- a. focus on approaches to risk management that reduce the need for hard protection structures and similar engineering interventions;*
- b. take into account the nature of the coastal hazard risk and how it might change over at least a 100-year timeframe, including the expected effects of climate change; and*
- c. evaluate the likely costs and benefits of any proposed coastal hazard risk reduction options.*





3. *Where hard protection structures are considered to be necessary, ensure that the form and location of any structures are designed to minimise adverse effects on the coastal environment.*
4. *Hard protection structures, where considered necessary to protect private assets, should not be located on public land if there is no significant public or environmental benefit in doing so.*

A Guidance Note has been provided (December 2017) on both Objective 5 (the coastal hazard objective) and the four Policies that address coastal hazards (Policies 24-27). As outlined in this guidance note:

*“the overarching goal of the coastal hazard objective and policies is to manage coastal hazard risks so that the likelihood of them causing social, cultural, environmental and economic harm is not increased. This includes harm arising from responses to those coastal hazards, such as the addition of hard protection structures. The adoption of long-term risk-reduction approaches is strongly encouraged”*

To determine the appropriateness of a hard protection structure at this section of coastline, it has been demonstrated in Section 5.0, that the ‘soft’ protection options such as planting and renourishment are not appropriate to deal with the progressive erosion hazard at site.

The option of ‘*Managed Retreat*’ has also been considered. If the beach state was providing evidence that the current erosion trend was part of a longer-term fluctuation around an equilibrium profile, then there would be a strong case for a managed retreat at the site comprising relocation of the existing dwellings at threat. Once these were moved landward the duneline could continue retreating, reach its maximum eroded position, before (at some point in the future) beginning to accrete again. However, the material exposed in the dune scarp is old, consolidated sedimentary material, rather than dune sands. This extent of erosion is occurring landward of any potential equilibrium profile, and based on the historical dataset it has been progressive for at least the last 60 years. The exact effects of sea-level rise on future dune retreat are potentially uncertain, although likely to result in an increase in the rate of erosion of these sandy shorelines. A re-location of dwellings to a more landward location does not prevent a progressive loss of land for the Applicants from the combined effect of this progressive erosion and likely future increase. Accordingly it has been determined that this



option is not appropriate, and the Applicants are seeking to reduce the long-term hazard risk by providing toe protection to the coastal dune.

Policy 27(4) sets out that hard protection structures should not be located on public land if there is no significant public or environmental benefit in doing so. It is therefore important to consider whether it is practicable to establish an armouring measure to prevent cliff retreat located entirely on private property. The dwellings are located on raised ground at the head of the cliffs, with the existing property boundaries located at or in close proximity (2m approx.) to the headscarp of the cliffs. In order to prevent erosion the armouring needs to be located at the toe of the dune.

Establishing erosion protection inside the Applicant's property would require relocating the dwellings, allowing the dune line to retreat, and then constructing the armouring as currently designed.

It is noted that pursuant to the Marine and Coastal Area Act 2011 (see Section 6.1.6) the local Authority has been divested of title to the seaward Reserve (Lot 2 DP 91297) and this area is now CMCA. In addition, at times of low sand level, the landward Reserve (Lot 5 DP 196729) is partially under water and that part of the title is also now CMCA. The extent of remaining public land in this area comprises predominantly a steep dune scarp that is unsuitable and unavailable for access. This remaining public land will be imminently lost by ongoing cliff retreat, therefore the additional public value that will be gained by requiring this approach is considered to be negligible.

On balance, due to the constraints of the site, progressive nature of erosion, and management approach being adopted elsewhere on the wider coastline, the establishment of a hard protection structure across the two sites is considered not to be inconsistent with the provisions of the NZCPS 2010.



#### **6.4 Northland Regional Policy Statement**

The aim of the Northland Regional Policy Statement (NRPS) is to promote sustainable management of Northland's natural and physical resources, in accordance with the purpose and principles of the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA).

The proposal is considered to be consistent with the relevant NRPS Objectives listed below:

*Objective 3.13 – "The risks and impacts of natural hazard events...on people, communities, property...are minimised by..."*

*(e) Enabling appropriate hazard mitigation measures to be created to protect existing vulnerable development..."*

The existing dwellings and property are located within an area undergoing progressive retreat, and the close proximity of the cliff scarp to the dwellings mean they are considered highly vulnerable to erosion over the next 50 years. An options assessment has been undertaken and the construction of toe armouring to prevent ongoing retreat demonstrated to be the most suitable option at the site. This is considered therefore an appropriate mitigation measure, being a similar type of structure to that already existing on the subject coastline.

*Objective 3.14 – "...protect from inappropriate subdivision, use and development*

*(a) the qualities and characteristics that make up the natural character of the coastal environment, and the natural character of freshwater bodies and their margin..."*

As identified by the Northland Regional Plan, the characteristics that make up the Natural Character of the coastal environment within the Hokianga Harbour have been identified as wide-scale values of a relatively untouched landscape, with few human structures, with outstanding features including large headland dunes and large areas of native bushland. The subject site is set within an area of localised development within the harbour, remote from these specifically identified features. The Character of the coastline bordering Ōmāpere / Opononi is considered somewhat compromised, due to the development of existing coastal protection structures. The sites are already subdivided and development for residential use, which is not changing as a result of the proposal. The current proposal is rather a consequence of the existing use of these



sections established at the time of the subdivision. As noted above, the Character of the Harbour is established by large scale features, observed from distance. The relatively small scale structure at the toe of the dune will not affect these wider scale landforms and values. Further, the visual effect of the wall from distance will be significantly mitigated by the revegetation planting to the upper dune.

## 6.5 Northland Regional Soil and Water Plan

### 6.5.1 Regional Soil and Water Plan Zoning

The Northland Regional Soil and Water Plan (NRSWP) manages the effects of land use activities on water and soil in Northland above the line of MHWS. The relevant area is identified as a Riparian Management Zone, which extends from MHWS at the seaward extent to 20m landward of the 'top of the bank' where the dominant slope is greater than 15 degrees, as it is at the site (Figure 6.5.1a). This encompasses the entirety of the work proposed at the site, with this line extending to approximately the rear of the existing dwellings (Figure 6.5.1b).

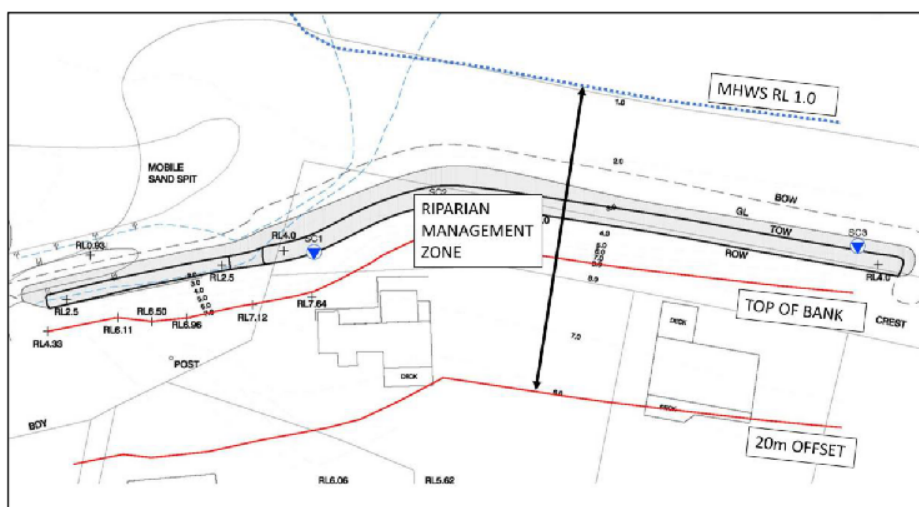


Figure 6.5.1a: Riparian Management Zone – ex Northland Soil and Water Plan

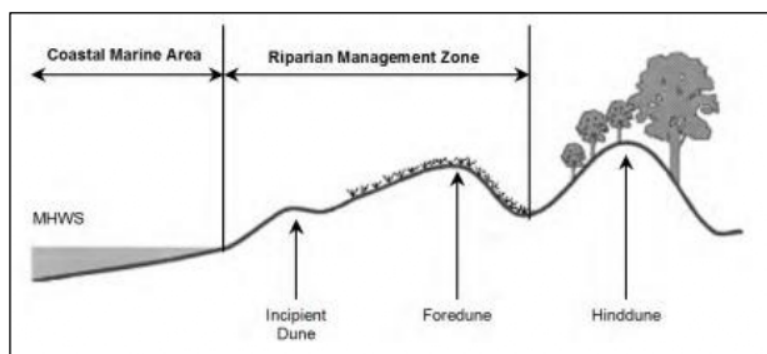


Figure 6.5.1b: Riparian Management Zone overlaid on site aerial

## 6.5.2 Regional Soil and Water Plan Activity Status

### Consent under Section 9 (2) RMA – Land Disturbance within a Riparian Management Zone

Rule 34.3.1 of the NRSWP defines that earthworks activities not complying with the Permitted Rules are a Discretionary Activity, that is, earthworks exceeding an area of 200m<sup>2</sup> and/or a volume of 50m<sup>3</sup>. Earthworks totalling 750m<sup>2</sup> and 300m<sup>3</sup> (net) are proposed (more detail provided in Section 4.3). Therefore, these earthworks within the Riparian Management Zone are defined as a Discretionary Activity.

In addition, Rule 34.1.3 of the Permitted Rules states that earthworks in the Riparian Management Zone also must comply with the General Environmental Standards of Section 32. Where these do not, Rule 34.3.1 defines these as a Discretionary Activity. Standard 32.1.6 states *“the activity shall not interfere with...any other sites known to the local iwi which are of spiritual or cultural significance to Maori...”*. The site is in close proximity to a Site of Cultural Significance to Maori, and therefore the proposed land disturbance is considered as a Discretionary Activity.

## 6.5.3 Regional Soil and Water Plan Statutory Assessment

Land disturbance associated with the proposed Seawall does not comply with General Environmental Standard 32.1.6 in that *“the activity shall not interfere with or destroy any waahi tapu, as defined in the Definitions, urupa or any other sites known to the local iwi which are of spiritual or cultural significance to Maori, which have been identified to the Council...”*. As





detailed below, the site is defined as a Site of Cultural Significance to Maori under the District Plan as a “*tauranga waka; ancestral place*”.

Pre-lodgement consultation has been undertaken by the Applicants with a representative of the local hapū management committee, who represent Ngāti Korokoro, Ngāti Wharara and Te Pouka. It is understood from this initial consultation that a burial site is located immediately south of the seawall, where issues have arisen with koiwi (human bones) being exposed in the retreating dune scarp. Consultation with this party is expected to be ongoing through the Resource Consent process and any further feedback on the proposal will be provided to the Consent Authority when it is received.

Assessment Criteria associated with land disturbance activities are provided in Section 36.4, which generally require Applicants to demonstrate potential for effects on sedimentation, loss of vegetation, and timing and scale of works. A summary of responses to these criteria is provided below.

The land disturbance activity comprises re-shaping of a coastal dune. Following construction of the seawall, approximately 3-4m of the upper dune will remain over-steep above the structure, along approximately 100m of the coastline. This will be re-shaped using an excavator to a more stable 1(vert):2(horiz) batter, and will primarily comprise reducing the height of the upper dune and respreading this material to the foreshore immediately seaward of the new wall. The works will be undertaken immediately following construction of the seawall, and due to the simplicity of the work will be quick to undertake (approximately 1-2 days), with no material needing to be removed from site.

The work is to be undertaken on a coastal dune immediately adjacent to the coastal area. The material to be disturbed comprises unconsolidated dune sands, and more consolidated cemented sandstone. This material is already exposed in the dune scarp, and due to the presence of the seawall is not at risk of further wave attack during the earthworks. As this material is essentially sand, the risk of exacerbated sedimentation of the adjacent Harbour due to mobilised silt is considered to be very low (Criteria 36.4b).



Significant re-vegetation of the re-shaped dune is proposed, which is not currently practicable due to the progressive erosion. This planting will be undertaken in the first planting season following the works. To assist in the establishment of this vegetation two lines of temporary wind fencing are proposed which will assist in minimising mortality of these plants as they establish on the exposed dune face and reduce the risk of dune blowouts as these plants are establishing (Criteria 36.4e). The fencing will remain in place until the plants have established a comprehensive cover to the upper dune, estimated to be approximately 2-5 years.

A full assessment of the proposal against these criteria has been undertaken in Appendix C1 and the work demonstrated to be consistent with these criteria.

### **6.6 Proposed Northland Regional Plan – Appeals Version**

At present, a cohesive Proposed Northland Regional Plan (PNRP), which combines the individual plans (Coastal, Soil and Water, Air Quality) is proposed and in the Appeals stage. This plan is not yet Operative, however a Statutory assessment against the 'Appeals Version' of August 2020 has been presented below.

#### **6.6.1 Proposed Northland Regional Plan Zoning**

The seawall and access structure are above the MHWS line, and also above the 'Cross-River Coastal Marine Area Boundary' as shown on the PNRP maps (Figure 6.6.1). Therefore many of the new protection elements in relation to the CMA (such as Significant Ecological Areas) are not relevant to the proposal.



Figure 6.6.1: Site and indicative Coastal Marine Area Boundary (red line)

#### 6.6.2 Proposed Regional Plan Activity Status

##### Consent under Section 9(2) RMA – ‘CMCA Structures’

Rule C1.1.22 of the Appeals Version of the Northland Regional Plan defines the “*erection, reconstruction, placement, alteration, extension, maintenance, repair, removal or, demolition of a hard protection structure and the occupation of the common marine and coastal area by the hard protection structure...and the use of the hard protection structure*” as a Discretionary Activity.

Rule C1.1.22 addresses hard protection structures within the CMA, and as the seawall is outside the CMA it may be considered this rule does not apply. However the note associated with the rule states “*for the avoidance of doubt it covers RMA activities associated with the erection, placement, replacement, alteration, extension, maintenance, repair, removal or demolition of a hard protection structure (s9(2))*”. As Section 9 of the RMA only relates to restrictions on use of land, then it is interpreted that this rule applies to the proposal. Accordingly it is addressed within this application, which is defined based on the note above as a Discretionary Activity.

Rule C8.3.4 of the Appeals Version of the Northland Regional Plan defines the “*Earthworks outside the bed of a river or lake, a wetland, or the coastal marine area, and any associated*



*damming and diversion of stormwater and discharge of stormwater onto or into land where it may enter water, that are not a permitted or controlled activity under another rule in section C.8.3 of this Plan*” as a discretionary activity. Therefore, earthworks exceeding 200m<sup>2</sup> within the Coastal Dune and Riparian Management zone are defined as a Discretionary Activity.

### **6.6.3 Proposed Regional Plan Statutory Assessment**

Policies for Hard Protection Structures are provided by the PNRP under Sections D.6.1 and D.6.2. The proposed works have been assessed against these in Appendix C2 and demonstrated to be consistent with these Plan provisions.

Policy D4.26 of the PNRP provides Criteria to be adhered to when considering earthworks activities. These are very similar to the issues raised and addressed under the Regional Soil and Water Plan above (Section 6.5) and accordingly these are not assessed again under the PNRP.



## 7.0 Consultation

### 7.1 *Mana Whenua / Customary Marine Title Applicant Consultation*

The proposed works are outside the CMA and therefore not subject to the provisions of the MACA 2011 with respect to consultation with CMT Applicants. This consultation has not been undertaken.

However, due to the identified significance of the site to local iwi, and the proposed undertaking of earthworks at the coastal margin, the Applicant has made contact with a representative from the local hapū management committee, who represent Ngāti Korokoro, Ngāti Wharara and Te Pouka.

The project was discussed, although no formal feedback was received. This correspondence is attached (Appendix D). It is understood that there is a wāhi tapu comprising a historic burial reserve adjacent to the Waihuka stream, on the subject northern side of the river, and that koiwi (human remains) have been periodically exposed by the ongoing erosion. Due to the importance of the site it is expected that consultation will be ongoing with the local hapū. The contact person, Alan Hessel, has advised that Council can also contact them directly regarding the proposal (094058832, [gildahessel@xtra.co.nz](mailto:gildahessel@xtra.co.nz))

Any resulting feedback or reporting will be provided to the Consent Authority as it is available.





## 8.0 Assessment of Environmental Effects (Schedule 4)

### 8.1 Preservation of Natural Character

The majority of the wider Hokianga Harbour is identified as an area of High Natural Character under the PNRP (Figure 8.1). The Plan describes the Harbour Character as having:

*“Largely indigenous cover and infauna. Commercial fishing methods constrained to some degree in the Harbour. Few obvious human structures within the Harbour (apart from navigation marks)”.*



Figure 8.1: Mapped area of High Natural Character, ex PNRP

At a more localised scale, the 4km stretch of coastline between the coastal settlements of Ōmāpere and Opononi has had a moderate degree of human modification and built development. The townships of Ōmāpere and Opononi were areas of historic early settlement on the banks of the Hokianga. This has intensified over time, with these small rural coastal



villages generally established directly adjacent the coastal margin, with the hinterland primarily farmland with sparse dwellings. The State Highway, constructed in the mid 1930's, runs parallel to the line of the coast and can be seen in the foreground below (Photograph 8.1a); in places dwellings are located seaward of the highway, in other places the highway is directly adjacent the coast.

The development of this coast has resulted in associated coastal armouring and foreshore access structures, which are varying in quality. An armoured section of coastline is visible in the image below, with the northern extent of the coastline in this image now armoured, as the shot was taken prior to construction of the NZTA seawall. These structures have been outlined in Section 2.4 above, and consist of a range of rock revetment and rock riprap walls, and also a large seawall and jetty south of the site (Photograph 8.1b).



**Photograph 8.1a: Existing built character north of site ex [www.barfoot.co.nz](http://www.barfoot.co.nz) (accessed Feb 2020)**



Photograph 8.1b: Existing built character south of site ex [www.barfoot.co.nz](http://www.barfoot.co.nz) (accessed Feb 2020)

Elements contributing to the Natural Character of the site are the high coastal dune scarp and sandy foreshore. There is relatively little mature native vegetation on the site, with a generally sparsely vegetated dune crest, the exception being a semi-mature Pōhutukawa located at the northern extent of No 264.

There is tension between the preservation of the Natural Character of the coastline, and the desire of the Applicants to protect their properties from ongoing coastal erosion. The protection of private property from ongoing retreat of the coastal margin has resulted in the construction of a number of existing seawall structures as highlighted above. These structures to an extent compromise the Natural Character of the immediate Ōmāpere/Opononi coastline. As set out earlier, ongoing retreat of this coastal dune is likely to result in increasing pressure on the adjacent development. The existing management approach (for both private property and national infrastructure) has been to address the erosion with armouring rather than shift the property/asset out of the hazard zone, and this proposal is consistent with this management approach.

Applications for coastal armouring are more likely to be appropriate when they are located in areas where armouring exists already, and they are able to maintain a cohesive style. Whilst there are no armouring structures immediately adjacent to the site, there are a number of existing built structures on the coastline north and south. The proposed armouring provides toe protection to the dune only, rather than seeking to armour the entire dune face. This allows



development of a planted dune above the seawall which is considered a positive mitigating factor for the proposal. In addition, the semi-mature Pōhutukawa will be retained and allowed to reach maturity which is another positive mitigating factor. The vegetation will directly mitigate visual effects of the structure by obscuring parts of the seawall, but it will also represent a positive outcome for the wider Natural Character values.

Development within this section of coastline, at the local scale proposed, in an area that is already modified, doesn't detract from the wider scale Character values of the Harbour outlined above. As a consequence, the potential effects on Natural Character of the proposed armouring are considered to be minor.

## **8.2 Cultural / Historic Heritage**

The FNDP identifies an area encompassing the southern extent of No 266, the outlet of the stream, and some of the adjacent headland south of the stream, as a 'Site of Cultural Significance to Māori' (Figure 8.2). The site is scheduled as "*Te Paraoa - tauranga waka; ancestral place*". Further information on the Waihuka stream and its' cultural significance was found online:

*"Midway along Omapere bay is the Waihuka stream. There was once an ancient wahi tapu and a tauranga waka at its mouth. The wahi tapu was on a point of land on the northern bank, the tauranga was on its inland side. Both were completely destroyed by flooding and rough tides in 1904. The foreshore further inland beyond where the wahi tapu and tauranga waka were in 1904, has also eroded. The human remains were gathered up and buried. Fewer human remains are now found. Among the artefacts recovered were unfinished adzes." (WAI 2003, Second Statement of Evidence of John Klarich, dated 18<sup>th</sup> March 2014)*

As discussed, the Applicant has made contact with a representative from the local hapū management committee, who represent Ngāti Korokoro, Ngāti Wharara and Te Pouka, to discuss the project. It is understood that this hapū is best placed to provide advice on potential effects to cultural heritage of the proposed works. The Applicants intend that this consultation will be an ongoing process, however no formal feedback has been received at this point. It is understood that there is a wāhi tapu comprising a historic burial reserve adjacent to the





Waihuka stream, on the subject northern side of the river, and that koiwi (human remains) have been periodically exposed by the ongoing erosion. Due to the importance of the site it is expected that consultation will be ongoing with the local hapū. The contact person, Alan Hessel, has advised that Council can also contact them directly regarding the proposal.

Any information or reporting arising from this consultation will be provided to the Consent Authority as it is available.

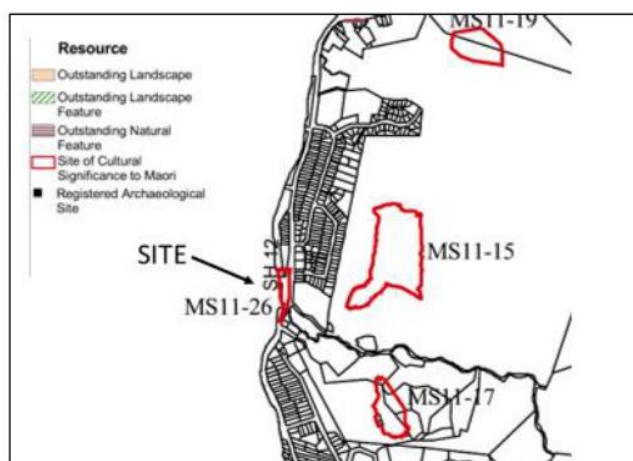


Figure 8.2: Site in proximity to 'Site of Cultural Significance to Māori'

It is expected that standard Resource Consent conditions will be imposed dictating Archaeological Discovery protocols. These protocols will likely dictate that all site works in the vicinity of the discovery should cease; a site supervisor should secure the area to ensure that artefacts or remains are untouched; and that the site supervisor would notify Mana Whenua, the New Zealand Historic Places Trust, Department of Conservation, and both the local (FNDC) and regional (NRC) Councils.

### 8.3 Visual Impact

Three potential viewing audiences of the seawall structure can be defined:

- (a) View for local residents overlooking the site
- (b) View for recreational users of the beach
- (c) View for boat users of the Hokianga





(a) View for local residents overlooking the site

The site extends across the base of the dune scarp seaward of No 264 – 266, and south up the bank of the stream outlet, seaward of No 268 and No 270 (Figure 8.3). These two properties to the south are the closest dwellings to the site and consideration of the potential visual effects of the new structure on these properties needs consideration.

Images have been obtained of the seaward view from both of these properties (Photograph 8.3a - No 268, Photograph 8.3b - No 270). The indicative arc of the photos has been marked up on Figure 8.3a. As can be seen from both properties, there are expansive views looking to the west across to the harbour mouth, to the raised rock cliff and vegetated headland at the southern arm of the harbour, and the large dunes at the northern arm of the harbour.

In the foreground, the raised dune ridge is evident, with the mature pine trees dominating on the dune south of the river outlet, and the grass / pampas evident on the northern dune. As can be seen, with the exception of the river outlet, the raised northern dune ridge entirely obscures the interface at the base of the dune and the foreshore. It is at this location where the proposed seawall is to be located.

The property at No 270, is most likely to be able to see the seawall, with a view looking down the alignment of the river. As can be seen from the photograph, where the approximate end of the structure has been marked, only the low end to the structure at this upstream end is potentially visible. The bulk of the seawall will be hidden behind the raised dune ridge and not visible for this property.

The property at No 268 has a greater level of visual obstruction of the seawall alignment by the dune ridge and as can be seen in the image is unable to see any part of the foreshore.



Figure 8.3a: Adjacent properties and indicative locations of photos



Photograph 8.3a: View from adjacent dwelling at 268 SH 12 ([www.bayleys.co.nz](http://www.bayleys.co.nz), accessed 22/09/20)



**Photograph 8.3b: View from adjacent dwelling at 270 SH 12 (ex [www.bookabach.co.nz](http://www.bookabach.co.nz), accessed 15/10/19)**

Accordingly, as evidenced by the above images, the potential visual effect of the new wall on these adjacent properties is considered to be less than minor.

**(b) View for recreational users of the beach**

The two closest public access points to the site (Figure 8.3b), are 220m north at Lucy Baxter Reserve, and 500m south at Freese Park, just north of the boat ramp and jetty. Public access is difficult at Lucy Baxter Reserve due to the height of the dune scarp and lack of any public access structure. However, due to the concentration of dwellings along this coast, pedestrian traffic is likely along the beach, especially during the warmer summer months. The seawall will be visible to users of the beachfront in this area. However, given the reasonable extent of coastal modification already present along the beachfront, and that most beach users will be traversing a reasonable length of beach between access points, encountering a number of different seawalls, this additional length of seawall is considered to be consistent with the experience of



these users. The establishment of a significant area of natural dune vegetation is considered to be a positive aspect of the proposal for these users.



**Figure 8.3b: Indicative public access points to foreshore**

(c) View for boat users of the Hokianga

There is a public access boat ramp located approximately 650m south from the site, within the centre of Ōmāpere township. An additional public boat ramp is at Opononi, opposite the Opononi hotel, 3km north from the site. As such boat traffic past the site is likely to be relatively frequent when conditions permit.

The harbour is likely to be frequented by recreational boat users, for fishing, seafood collection and water sport activities in the summer months. Ferries also frequent the harbour, taking passengers to dune-boarding activities on the sand dunes opposite Opononi.

Typical expected boat traffic navigational paths are outlined below (Figure 8.3c). Nearshore boat access is likely to be relatively unusual in the harbour, with most boat traffic heading to and from



the harbour mouth, to the boat ramp at Ōmāpere or Opononi, and keeping to the deeper channel. As such, typical viewing distances for boat users will be in the range of 400 to 650m.

The seawall, of which majority will be buried under the beach front, will extend to RL4.0. At sand level at the time of the site investigation, this would result in a structure approximately 1.5m high at the base of the dune. At the viewing distances outlined above, and with the establishment of the dune planting to the upper dune, a structure of this scale is unlikely to be readily discernible from the backing dune.

The access stairs will extend to the head of the dune, approximately RL 7.0, however they are a narrow, natural timber structure, approximately 1.5m wide, and the timber will tend to 'silver' off over time giving it a relatively recessive appearance.

In the context of the wider coastline including armouring structures, a jetty, boat ramp and other modification of the coastal margin, the proposed seawall and stair is considered to be of a similar type and scale to existing structures in the area, and therefore consistent with the visual effect of this stretch of coastline. The wall is not considered to markedly alter the view of the Bay, for boat users viewing the wall.





Figure 8.3c: Typical Boat Movements

#### **8.4 Public Access to and along the CMA**

Primary points of public access to the CMA are shown above (Figure 8.3b), which indicate relatively few points of ready access to the foreshore for beach users along the Ōmāpere embayment. In addition, there is a small Reserve strip located between the boundary of 270 and 268 State Highway 12 (Figure 8.4a). This Reserve access was provided as part of the subdivision in 2000 (DP 196729). This access is available for pedestrian use, although it is not clearly marked and with no defined path to the foreshore it is unlikely that it is used frequently. The approximate location of this access is shown below (Photograph 8.4) although we note this has not been surveyed so is indicative only. Any users of this access seeking to access the beach would not be affected by the wall. As noted above due to the concentration of dwellings along this coast, pedestrian traffic is likely along the beach, especially during the warmer summer months.



Figure 8.4a: Indicative pedestrian access located between 270 and 268 SH12



Photograph 8.4: Indicative location of public access to Reserve

Part 2 of the RMA sets out that the '*maintenance and enhancement of public access to and along the coastal marine area*' is a Matter of National Importance. Accordingly, where any structure is proposed that occupies space both within (and in the case of the proposal adjacent to) the CMA the potential effects on ready public access require consideration.



The wall will occupy a total footprint at the base of the dune of approximately 8m, however when sand levels on the beach are high, the majority of this structure will be buried. Therefore, it is sand level on the beach that exerts the primary control on how the new wall affects access. At sand level at the time of survey, approximately 5m of wall footprint was located above the foreshore (Figure 8.4b). With MHWS at RL 1.8, approximately 8m of high tide beach remains seaward of the structure and available for pedestrian access.

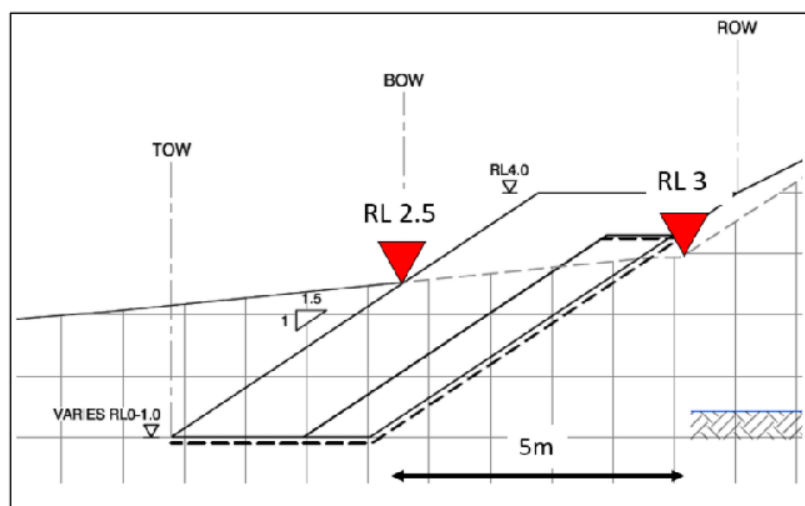


Figure 8.4b: Indicative area of occupation of structure – current sand level

### 8.5 Ecology and Natural Environment

The area of the proposed seawall, foreshore access stair and dune re-shaping is considered to be of relatively low ecological value. This is primarily due to the progressive erosion of the dune scarp preventing the development of any vegetation on the face of the dune. The sandy sediments of the foreshore are likely to provide habitat for small benthic species.

The existing foreshore sand will be excavated down to the design founding depth for the new wall. This has the potential to disturb any small organisms occupying this area. However, benthic communities occupying these dynamic beach features are considered relatively resilient, used to the dynamic influences of the coastal environment such as erosion and fluctuation in surface level. Following industry standards for noise, and ensuring no hydrocarbons / hydraulic fuel and the like are released to the surrounding environment by construction traffic can localise the effects of this disturbance.



The re-shaping of the rear dune will enable the establishment of a significant area of native dune vegetation species, approximately 900m<sup>2</sup> of upper dune and dune crest will be re-vegetated with spinifex, pingao, bracken and pohuehue. This will provide a natural dune habitat where one does not exist at present, and is considered a significant positive benefit to the ecology of the site.

The siting of the contractor's area, and movement of traffic delivering rocks to the site, is remote from the CMA. This contractor's area will be located on one of the Applicant's property, which is a flat grassed site (see Section 4.4.1). A temporary access will be formed down the dune face, and construction plant will comprise an excavator and a tracked dumper for transporting rock to the foreshore. Works will be undertaken on the foreshore as tidal level allows, with all machinery removed from the CMA prior to the subsequent high tide.

The proposed works are not considered to have an ongoing effect on the ecology of the foreshore.

## **8.6 *Effects on Coastal Processes***

### **8.6.1 Coastal Erosion**

The rock riprap wall has been designed to address the existing erosion hazard at the site currently threatening the backshore dwellings. The most vulnerable areas are located at the interface of the dune scarp with the foreshore, which is where erosion processes are concentrated. There is good evidence elsewhere on the coastline (see Photograph 2.4a) of even relatively rudimentary rock walls (at approximately RL 3.5 – 4.0) preventing progressive retreat of the dune. This provides good calibration as to both a wall crest height that is effective (at current sea level), and also the specification of wall (rock size, number of layers) that is likely to be required.

The seawall crest height for the main wall, where it is armouring the dune toe, has been set at RL 4.0. This provides 1.8m of freeboard above the current 1% AEP storm tide level, and 1.4m freeboard above the 1% AEP storm tide including wave set-up. At the existing walls north of the



site, evidence of overtopping (dead kikuyu) was evident at RL 3.6, however it was not where the crest height was RL 3.7 – 3.8. This provides indication the proposed crest height is of the right order and of a similar scale to other existing structures on the coastline.

As can be seen below (Figure 8.6.1a) the geotextile fines barrier behind the wall extends to approximately RL 3.3. This is because it is not practicable to effectively pin the backing geotextile behind the armour layer, where it would be visible and detract from amenity. Providing a geotextile to a higher elevation (say RL 4.0) would effectively require an increase in both wall footprint and crest height, such that the wall underlayer reached this level. This is not considered to be necessary, given demonstrated reasonable performance of lower specification structures on the subject coastline. Given the height of the geotextile level above both MHWS and the more extreme water levels, this 700mm section of wall above the geotextile is considered likely to be subject to swash and uprush only, rather than inundation below the static water level. Given the proposal to establish dune planting to the upper slope, these species are likely to send shoots down into the gaps between this top armour layer and assist in retention of sand in this location. Accordingly, the risk of large-scale erosion of dune sands from behind this upper armour, above the geotextile level, is considered to be low.

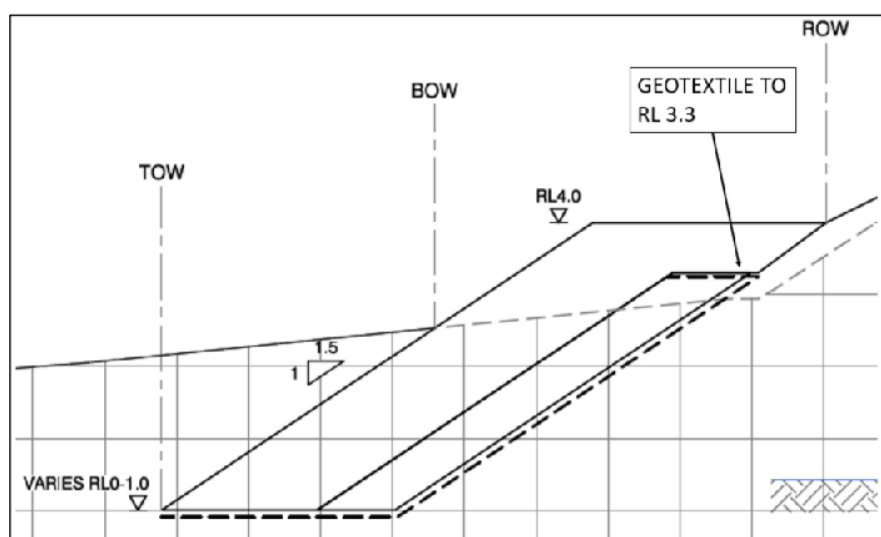


Figure 8.6.1: Indicative section showing geotextile level

The wall toe will be excavated approximately 500mm into underlying harder material, to prevent potential foundation undermining. This allows for the entire loss of the existing beach in front





of the structure (approximately 1.5m deep at time of survey), and lowering of 500mm of the underlying material, before the seawall is at risk of undermining. This is considered a suitably conservative allowance.

At the northern wall end, an end detail will be placed that comprises returning the main wall face at 90° into the backing dune. The wall will return a maximum of 4m into the dune face. Based on an indicative historic retreat of 0.4m, this allows for 10 years of dune line retreat before the wall end is threatened by the retreating coastline. Providing embedment greater than this into the existing over-steep dune would threaten collapse of the adjacent dune and is not considered to be practicable. Should the dune line retreat over the lifetime of the structure such that outflanking of the wall is threatened, it would be far simpler to increase the embedment at the end of the wall another 2-4m into the existing dune material at that time. The interaction with the southern wall end and the fluvial processes is discussed in more detail below (Section 8.6.2).

Potential end effects of this return wall end, adjacent the unarmoured dune, need consideration. Wall end effects can be caused in five primary ways.

- a) Groyne effect
- b) Return flow of over-topping and uprush
- c) Waves acting at an angle to the wall
- d) Rip currents and differential head
- e) Deflection of Swash

#### Groyne Effect

The proposed wall does not extend far enough down the beach profile to create a groyne effect. This would require a structure protruding further into the zone of typical sediment transport in order for any longshore movement of sediment to be disrupted by the groyne. Observation of similar scale structures on the shoreline to the north do not appear to be preferentially trapping sand at one side of the structure. Further evidence for the general lack of longshore transport is indicated by the beach cusps present on the beach, as these are only formed on beaches where incident wave energy is shore normal.



#### Return Flow of overtopping and uprush

Where water overtops a wall it can concentrate and scour an exit path, often at the end of the structure or at a point of weakness. However, the proposed riprap wall is permeable and overtopping will percolate back through the wall without significant concentrate. Accordingly this effect is not considered to result in additional scour.

#### Waves and or Swash Acting at an angle to the wall

This phenomenon can create longshore transport of sediment by resulting in a component of wave energy or swash current acting in a shore parallel direction. The wave environment at Ōmāpere is considered to be dominated by the south-westerly the deep water ocean waves, reducing in energy and spreading as they pass through the mouth of the harbour. This effect is evident in the aerial images (Figure 3.4). These waves are approaching at approximately shore perpendicular, which is also perpendicular to the alignment of the seawall. Whilst there is evidently very localised variations in longshore sediment movement, with wave fronts impacting the 'horns' of the beach cusps and diverging, at the wider embayment scale there does not appear to be any wave driven longshore sediment movement. As a result negative effects due to waves/swash approaching at an oblique angle to the wall face are considered to be negligible.

#### Rip Currents/Differential Head

The cause of rip currents within surf beaches is the subject of much study and some conjecture. The case of rip currents high on the beach face, where the actions are primarily of swash not wave action, is atypical of most rip currents. Swash moving up the beach impacting on a wall face will gain elevation when compared to swash moving up the unarmoured adjacent beach face (Figure 8.6.1b).

For example if the beach is at 1:10 and the wall at 1:2 when the water has flowed 1m past the toe of the wall the water elevation of swash on the wall will be 500mm, while the water elevation on the beach will be 100mm. This is a simplified illustration of the actions for explanation. Greater turbulence and potentially permeability of the wall will change the parameters but the principle holds and the situation creates a differential of head. The net differential in head will



create a component of flow in a shore parallel direction towards the end of the wall. The accelerated greater volume of flow preferentially scours the adjacent unprotected bank causing additional scour at the end of the wall. Similarly, a greater return current is created scouring the foreshore in a rip current type action.

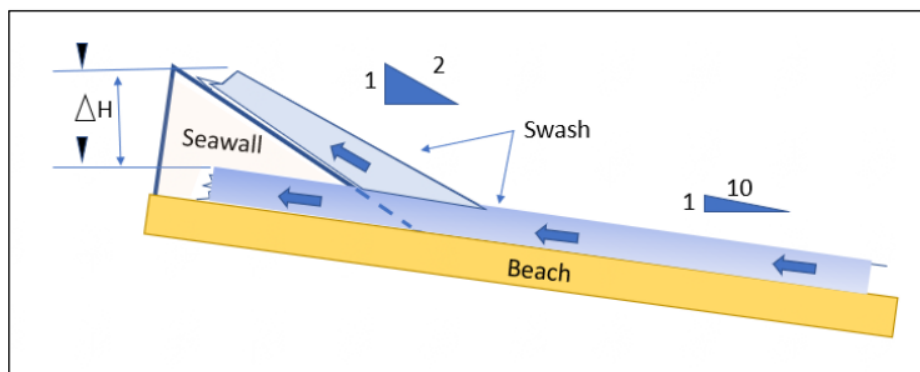


Figure 8.6.1b: Head differential at wall end

The placement of the new structure at the toe of the dune, as high as practicable up the beach profile, minimises the risk of this occurring.

#### Deflection of swash and wave energy by end of wall

This is a special or localised case of a wall being at an angle to the beach face. Where swash acts on the end of the wall it is deflected and channelled along the wall face to the adjoining bank. The return current then also tends to scour more as described above. The wall as proposed is located on an alignment that is directly perpendicular to the dominant angle of wave attack and accordingly there is low risk of deflection of swash and wave energy along the wall. Incoming energy will tend to be deflected directly back out to sea given the shore normal incident angle.

### **8.6.2 Fluvial Processes**

The design intent with the Type 1 wall, extending along the bank of the Waihuka stream, is to protect against fluvial driven erosion on this bank, and also to provide a suitable end detail to the wall that is not at risk of outflanking due to fluvial processes. This allows for a lower crest height (RL 2.5). The upstream wall end has been taken past the point where scour of the river



bank is evident, terminating just downstream of the confluence (Photograph 8.6.2a) between the main river arm and the overland flow path that runs south behind No 266 (see Figure 2.3).

The river planform has been measured (Figure 8.6.2) and is approximately 4m<sup>2</sup>. The new armouring occupies a planform area of 1m<sup>2</sup>, or 25%. This reduction in storage capacity may have the result of increasing the level of the river during catchment flooding events. This will not cause any issues on the northern side of the river due to the new armouring. The facing bank of the river is heavily vegetated at present (Photograph 8.6.2b), and despite some slight undercutting of this vegetation does not appear to be undergoing active erosion or scour due to the river flows. A temporary increase in river level during storm events does not appear likely to expose readily erodible material to fluvial processes, due to the presence of this vegetation. Accordingly the structure is not considered likely to result in undue additional scour to the facing southern bank of the river.



Photograph 8.6.2a: Indicative upstream end to wall

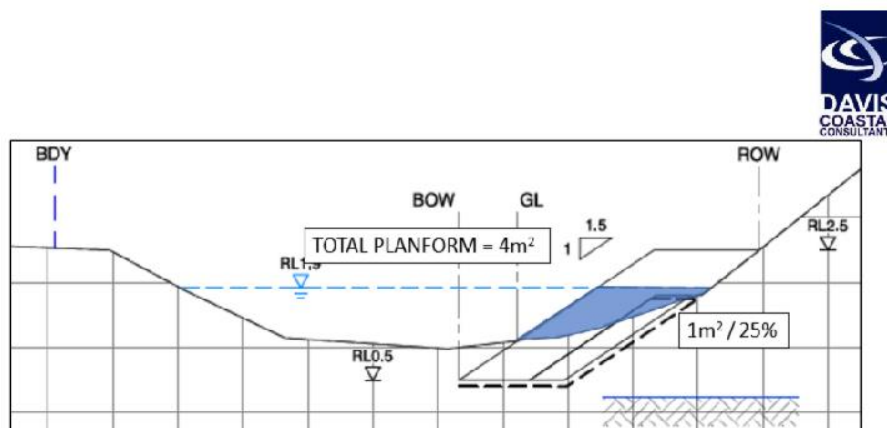


Figure 8.6.2: River planform occupation



Photograph 8.6.2b: Vegetation on southern bank of Waihuka stream

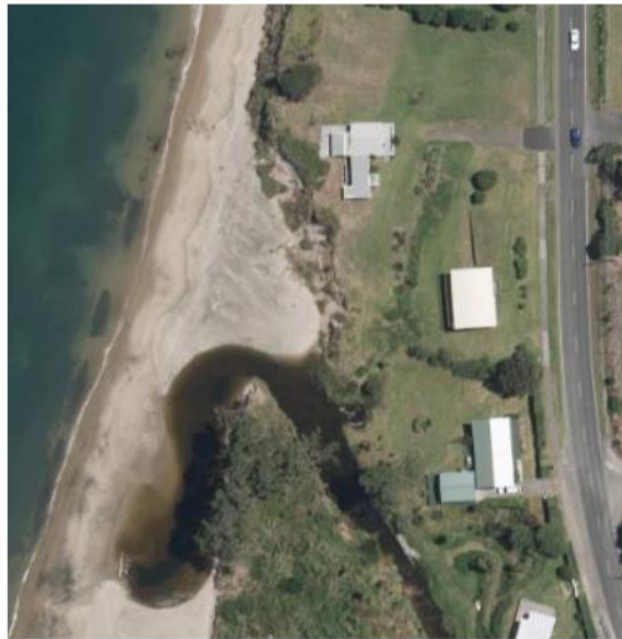
The historic aerial images indicate the outlet of the stream has meandered over time. At the time of the site visit it was tracking north, running along the base of the dune line before outletting onto the foreshore. However, at other times it has adopted a tight curve around the southern headland, with an outlet south of the vegetated headland (Photograph 8.6.2c). This process appears able to occur reasonably rapidly, with images from 2019 indicating both a north-east outlet direction and the southern alignment shown below.

This outlet location is controlled largely by the presence (or absence) of sand in the upper foreshore. As can be seen above (Photograph 8.6.2b) a large sand spit was present at the southern head of the stream, however clearly this is mobile and prone to fluctuation. It is also likely a river flood event would result in straightening of the outlet location, with the angle of the southern bank likely resulting in an outlet orientated approximately north-east. It is these events that would exacerbate scour of the dune at the site. The presence of the armouring is





considered unlikely to markedly alter the larger processes controlling the outlet location, as the structure is located high on the profile, sand will still be able to accumulate on the adjacent foreshore.



**Photograph 8.6.2c: Southern outlet of Waihuka stream**

### **8.6.3 Sea-Level Rise**

As set out above, the seawall crest height is RL 4.0, with the geotextile fines barrier providing protection to the backshore to RL 3.3. It has been demonstrated above that at present sea-level there is negligible risk to erosion of the backshore sediments above the geotextile height. The potential effect of sea-level rise over the 35 year Consent term and the longer-term timescale (100 years) is set out below (Table 8.6.3).



| Event                          | Current SL (m MSL) | SL + 400mm | SL + 1000mm |
|--------------------------------|--------------------|------------|-------------|
| MHWS                           | 1.2                | 1.6        | 2.2         |
| 1% AEP storm tide              | 2.2                | 2.6        | 3.0         |
| 1% AEP storm tide + wave setup | 2.6                | 3.0        | 3.6         |

**Table 8.6.3: Effect of sea-level rise on high water events**

As can be seen above, even with the effect of sea-level rise over the next 100 years MHWS and the 1% AEP storm tide remain below the geotextile level and accordingly these events will not pose issues for the structure. Further, for current predictions of sea-level rise over the 35 year Consent term, the structure remains resilient to the extreme water level events, including wave setup. Over the longer term, it is evident that at these extreme events water level will be at / above the geotextile, although below the crest of the wall. This may result in scour at this height, with loss of material from behind the wall and potential mortality of the dune revegetation species immediately at/above the wall. Given the significant length of time before this issue arises, an adaptive approach to sea-level rise over the 50-100 year timescale is considered appropriate.

Should overtopping of the wall be occurring such that erosion of the slope above the wall requires addressing, it would be a relatively simple matter to unpick the upper armour of the wall, place a new geotextile lapping with the existing, extend the underlayer, and place new armour to cover (Figure 8.6.3).

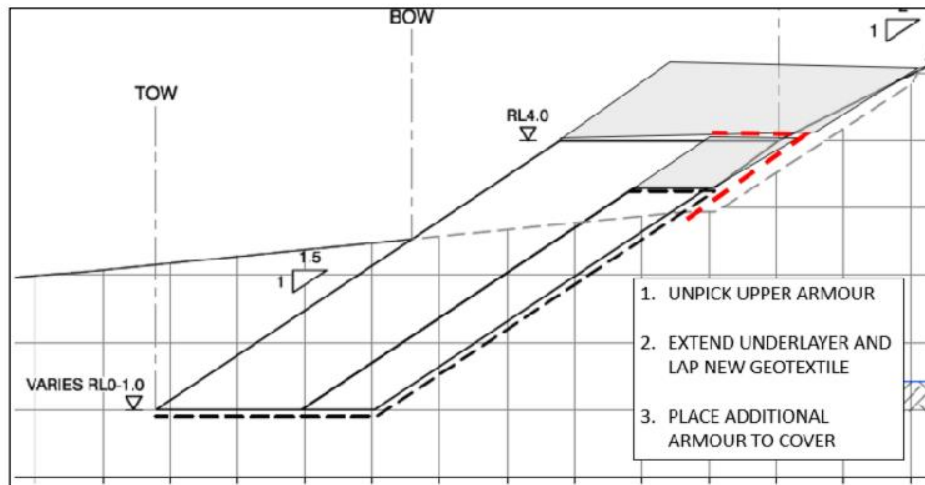


Figure 8.6.3: Indicative adaptive approach to sea-level rise resulting in erosion above proposed structure



## 9.0 Conclusion

This application proposes to construct a rock riprap seawall, and foreshore access stair, at properties 264 and 266 State Highway 12, Ōmāpere within the Hokianga Harbour.

The proposed structures have been outlined in detail in this report and on the accompanying plans. It is concluded that any adverse effects of the structure will be minor, and will not impact on the overall amenity and character of the Ōmāpere coastline.

The proposal is therefore considered to be consistent with the purpose and principles of the RMA, and with the relevant provisions of the Regional Soil and Water Plan, and the Proposed Regional Plan Appeals Version.

Consent, subject to appropriate conditions, can therefore be supported. In accordance with Section 95 of the RMA, given the demonstrated lack of effects, it is considered the Consent Authority is able to process this application on a non-notified basis, and can grant Consent under Section 104 of the RMA.

## **Appendix A** **Drawings**

1918– Ōmāpere Seawall - AEE



# OMAPERE SEAWALL

FOR  
**M.J CLUTTERBUCK & P.L HARVEY**  
**A.N PETRIE, H PETRIE & C.A ATCHISON**

PREPARED BY  
**DAVIS COASTAL**  
**CONSULTANTS**

**RESOURCE CONSENT**



| DRAWING SCHEDULE |                                    |     |          |
|------------------|------------------------------------|-----|----------|
| No               | TITLE                              | REV | DATE     |
| 01               | DRAWING SCHEDULE AND LOCATION PLAN | B   | 25.09.20 |
| 02               | EXISTING LAYOUT                    | B   | 25.09.20 |
| 03               | EXISTING SECTIONS                  | B   | 25.09.20 |
| 04               | PROPOSED PLAN                      | B   | 25.09.20 |
| 05               | PROPOSED SECTIONS 1 OF 2           | A   | 12.08.20 |
| 06               | PROPOSED SECTIONS 2 OF 2           | A   | 12.08.20 |
| 07               | PLANTING PLAN                      | -   | 12.08.20 |

|     |                        |                                   |                                    |
|-----|------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
|     |                        | DESIGN: DAVIS COASTAL CONSULTANTS |                                    |
|     |                        | SURVEY: -                         |                                    |
|     |                        | DRAWN: JMA                        |                                    |
|     |                        | CHECKED: -                        |                                    |
| B   | MIHWS UPDATED          | 25.09.2020                        | DATE: SEPTEMBER 2020               |
| A   | RESOURCE CONSENT ISSUE | 12.08.2020                        | SCALE: NTS                         |
| -   | PRELIMINARY ISSUE      | 21.10.2019                        | CAD FILE: 1918-02 266 SH12 Omapere |
| No. | REVISION DETAILS       | DATE                              |                                    |

NOT FOR CONSTRUCTION

JOB TITLE:

**OMAPERE SEAWALL**  
**264 & 266 STATE HIGHWAY 12**  
**OMAPERE**

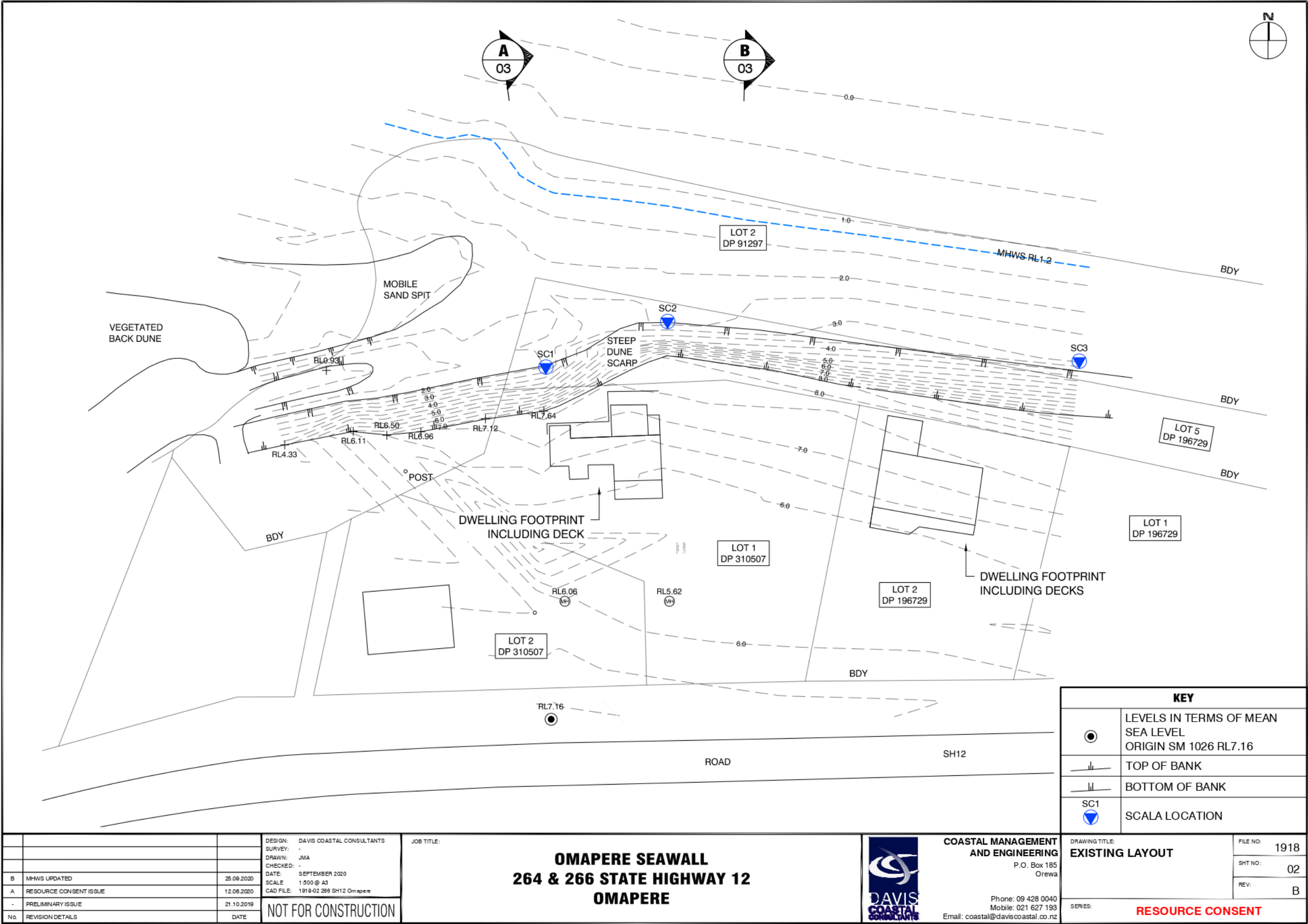


**COASTAL MANAGEMENT AND ENGINEERING**  
P.O. Box 185  
Orewa  
  
Phone: 09 428 0040  
Mobile: 021 627 193  
Email: coastal@daviscoastal.co.nz

DRAWING TITLE:  
**DRAWING SCHEDULE AND LOCATION PLAN**

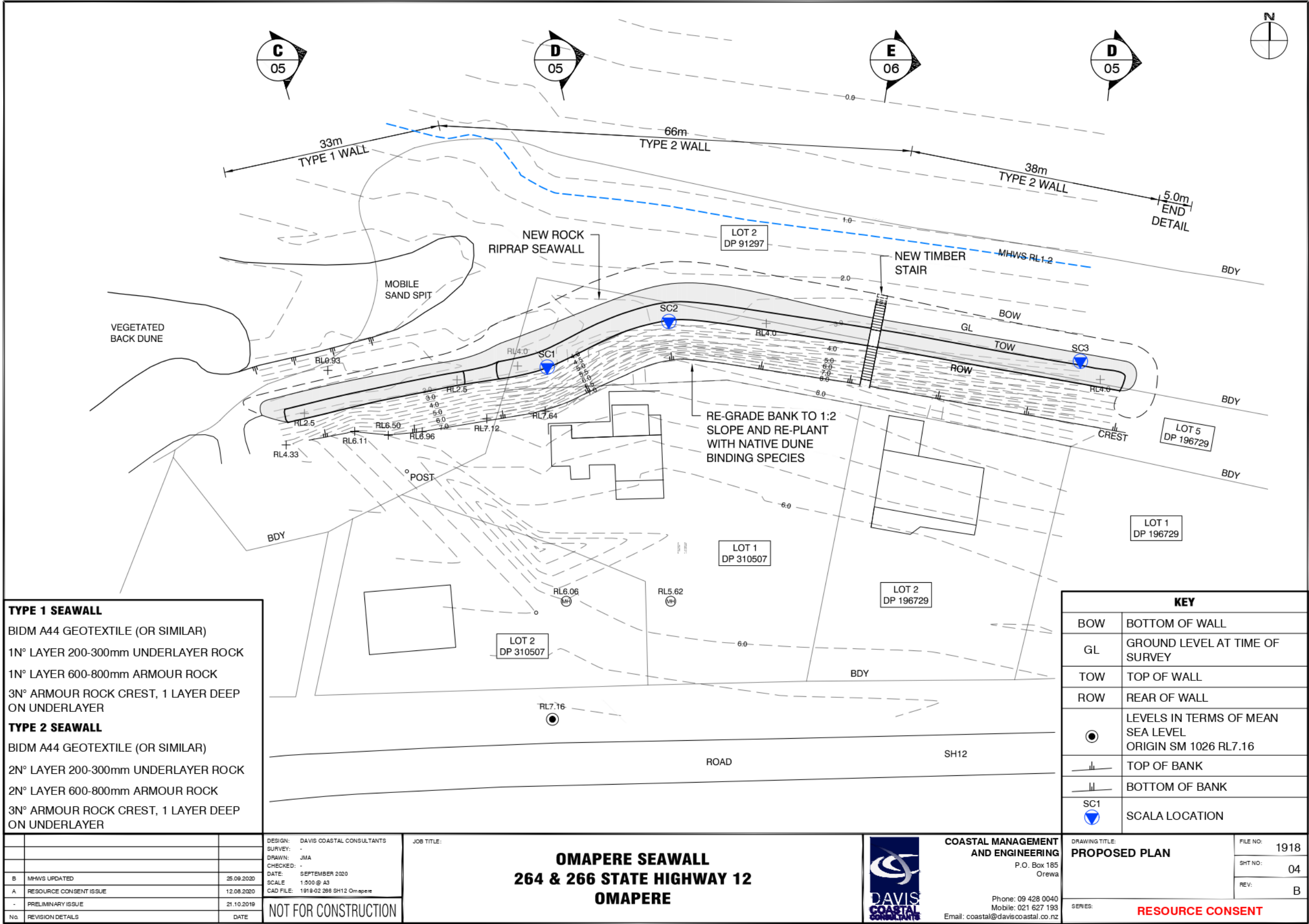
FILE NO: 1918  
SHT NO: 01  
REV: B

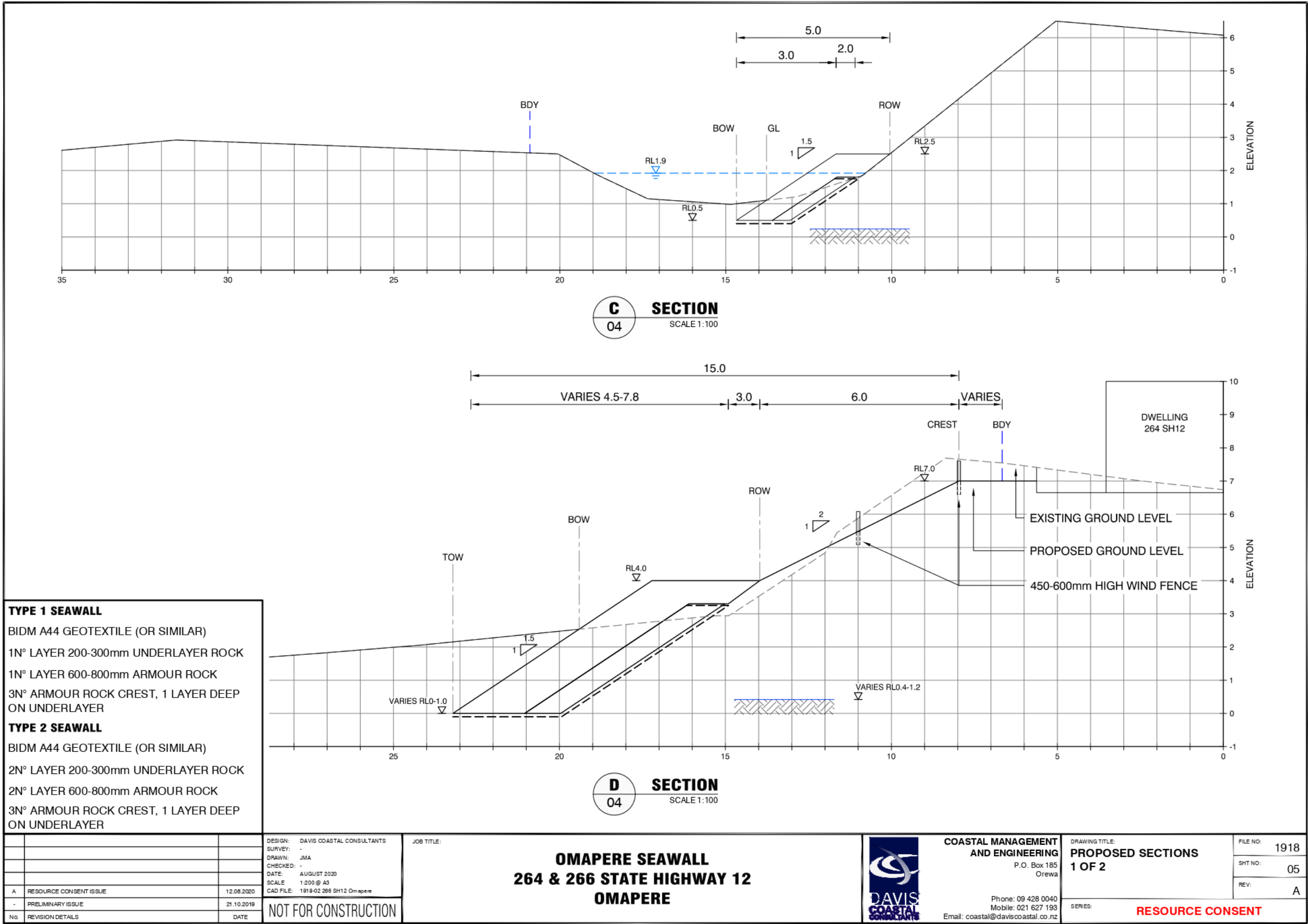
SERIES:  
**RESOURCE CONSENT**



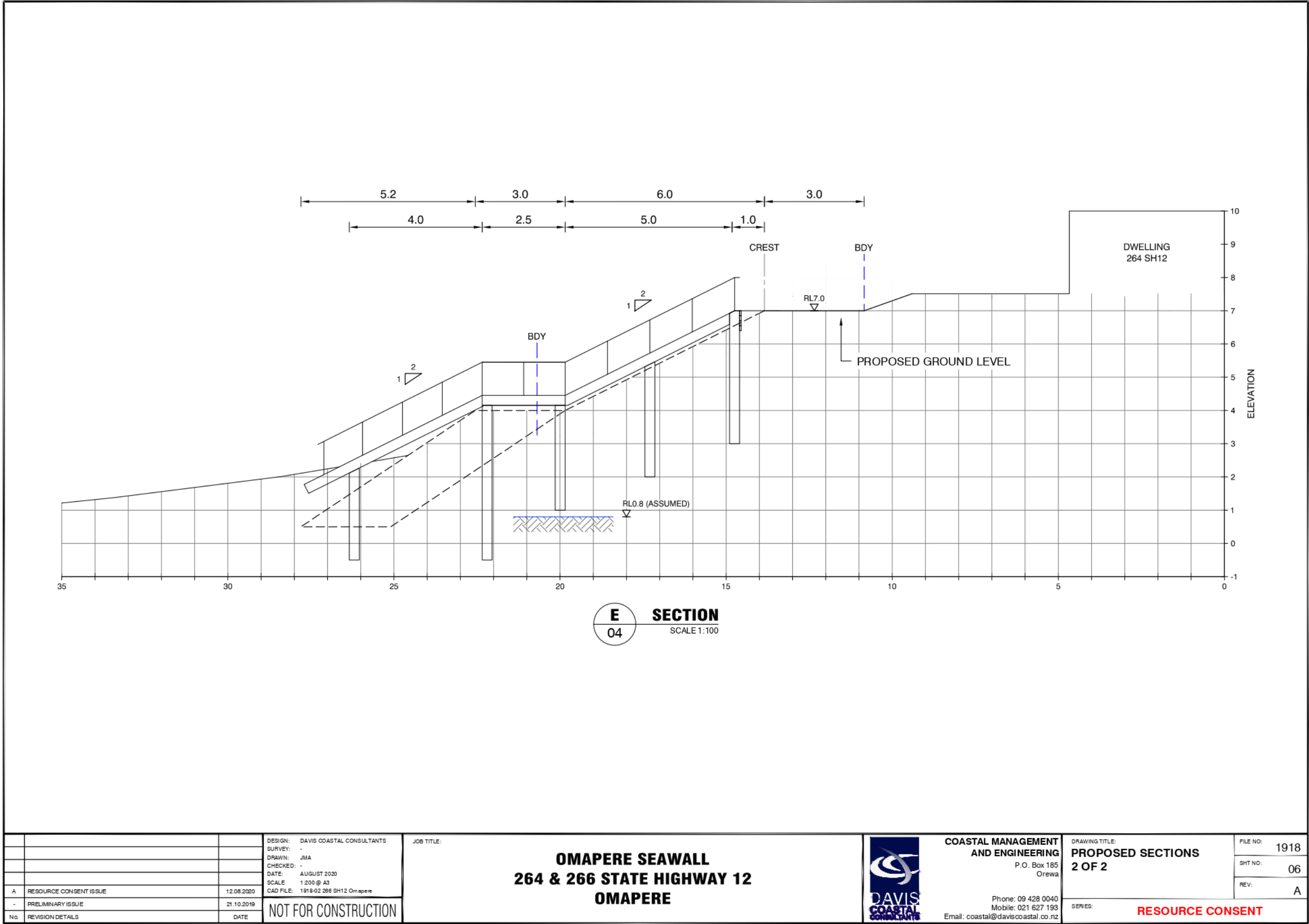
Page 185

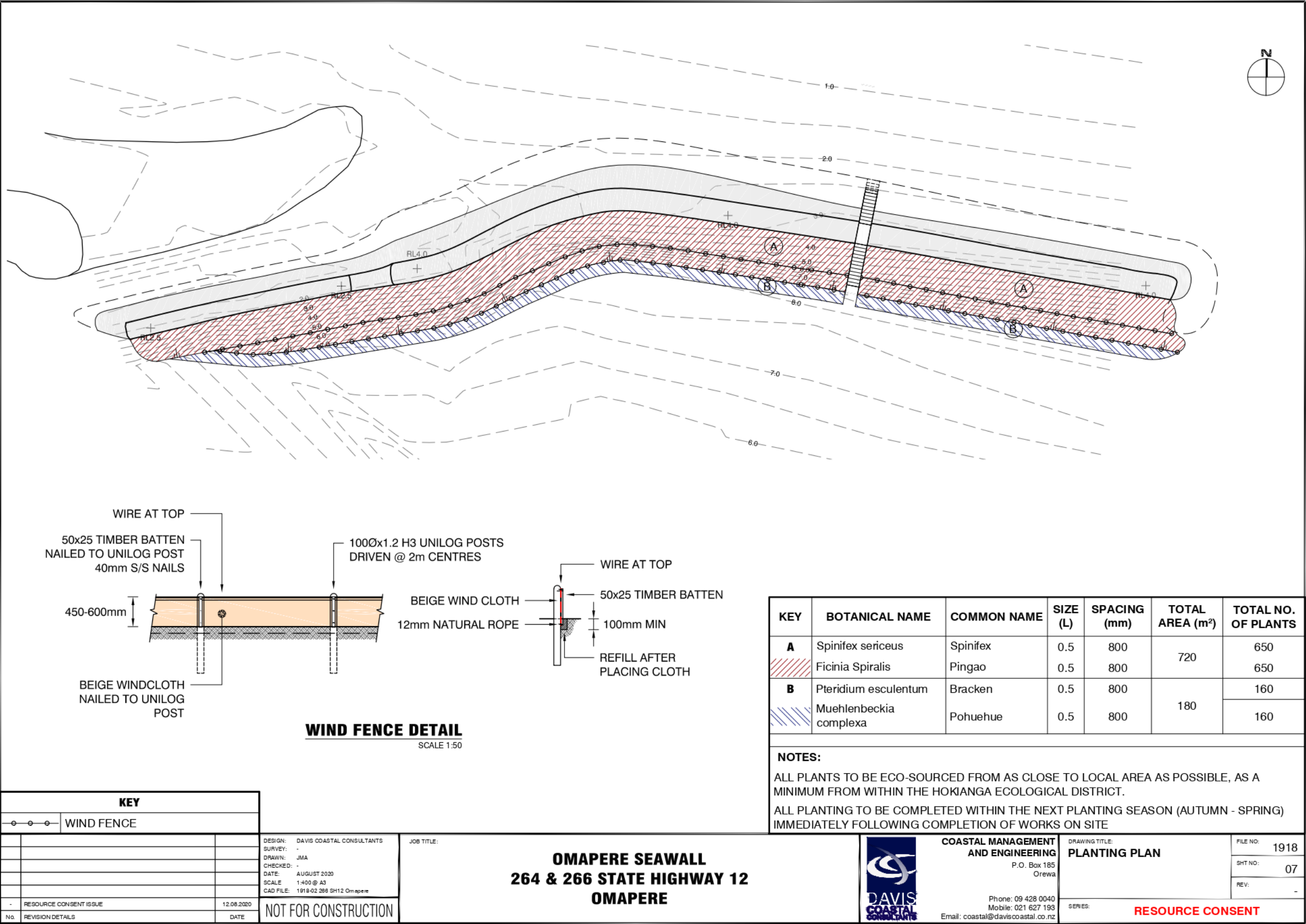














## **Appendix B**

# **Notification Assessment**

1918– Ōmāpere Seawall - AEE

Section 95A - Public Notification

Under Section 95A of the RMA, the Consent Authority is required to follow the following four step process to determine whether to publicly notify an application for a Resource Consent.

*“Step 1: mandatory public notification in certain circumstances*

*(2) Determine whether the application meets any of the criteria set out in subsection (3) and, -*

*(a) If the answer is yes, publicly notify the application; and*

*(b) If the answer is no, go to step 2*

*(3) The criteria for Step 1 are as follows:*

*(a) The applicant has requested that the application be publicly notified;*

*(b) Public notification is required under Section 95C:*

*(c) The application is made jointly with an application to exchange recreation reserve land under Section 15AA of the Reserves Act 1977”*

With regard to Step 1, the Applicant has not requested the application be publicly notified, Section 95C has not yet been considered as further information has not yet been requested by the Consent Authority, and no application is being made to exchange Recreation Reserve land. Therefore, Step 2 applies as below:

*“Step 2: if not required by step 1, public notification precluded in certain circumstances*

*(4) Determine whether the application meets either of the criteria set out in subsection (5) and,*

*-*

*(a) If the answer is yes, go to step 4 (step 3 does not apply); and*

*(b) If the answer is no, go to step 3*

*(5) The criteria for step 2 are as follows:*

*(a) The application is for a resource consent for 1 or more activities, and each activity is subject to a rule or national environmental standard that precludes public notification:*

*(b) The application is for a resource consent for 1 or more of the following, but no other, activities:*

*(i) a controlled activity:*

*(ii) a restricted discretionary or discretionary activity, but only if the activity is a subdivision of land or a residential activity:*

*(iii) a restricted discretionary, discretionary, or non-complying activity, but only if the activity is a boundary activity:*

*(iv) a prescribed activity”*



With regard to Step 2, the application is for a Resource Consent for more than 1 activity, and there is no rule or environmental standard precluding public notification for these activities. The Application is for activities other than residential activity / boundary activity, with an overall Discretionary Status. Therefore, the application meets neither of the criteria set out in Step 2 above and Step 3 applies as below:

*“Step 3: if not precluded by step 2, public notification required in certain circumstances*

*(7) Determine whether the application meets either of the criteria set out in subsection (8) and, -*

*(a) if the answer is yes, publicly notify the application; and*

*(b) if the answer is no, go to step 4*

*(8) The criteria for step 3 are as follows:*

*(a) The application is for a resource consent for 1 or more activities, and any of those activities is subject to a rule or national environmental standard that requires public notification;*

*(b) The consent authority decides, in accordance with Section 95D, that the activity will have or is likely to have adverse effects on the environment that are more than minor”*

With regard to Step 3, there is no rule or national environmental standard that requires public notification of the application. The potential adverse effects on the environment are assessed in Section 8.0. The assessment is guided by our experience in construction of similar structures across the country. It is considered as a result of that assessment that any adverse effects arising from the proposed rock riprap wall and timber stairway on the dune will be minor. On the basis of this assessment, the application meets neither of the criteria set out in Step 3 and Step 4 applies, as below:

*“Step 4: public notification in special circumstances*

*(9) Determine whether special circumstances exist in relation to the application that warrant the application being publicly notified, and –*

*(a) if the answer is yes, publicly notify the application; and*

*(b) if the answer is no, do not publicly notify the application, but determine whether to give limited notification of the application under Section 95B”*

With regard to Step 4, special circumstances have been defined through case law as circumstances *“outside the common run of things which is exceptional, abnormal or unusual, but they may be less than extraordinary or unique”* (Far North DC v Te Runanga-iwi o Ngati Kahu [2013]).

The proposed works are provided for under the relevant Regional Plans as a Discretionary Activity. They are similar in type and scale to other existing structures on the subject coastline, which to an extent has a compromised Character by these existing structures. Whilst there are no armouring structures immediately adjacent to the site, there are a number of existing built structures on the

coastline north and south. The scale of the structure has been minimised through design, with the structure providing toe protection to the dune only, rather than seeking to armour the entire dune face. This allows development of a planted upper dune above the seawall. As such, the structures in this coastal location is considered to be provided for and cannot be described as out of the ordinary or giving rise to special circumstances. Public notification in this regard is therefore not considered to be required.

Pursuant to this process, Step 4 directs that the Consent Authority should not publicly notify the application, but determine whether limited notification is required under Section 95B of the RMA.

#### Section 95B - Limited Notification

Under Section 95B of the RMA, the Consent Authority is required to follow the following four step process to determine whether to give limited notification of an application for a Resource Consent, if the application is not publicly notified under Section 95A.

*“Step 1: certain affected groups and affected persons must be notified*

*(1) Determine whether there are any-*

*(a) Affected protected customary rights groups; or*

*(b) Affected customary marine title groups*

*(2) Determine –*

*(a) Whether the proposed activity is on or adjacent to, or may affect, land that is the subject of a statutory acknowledgement made in accordance with an Act specified in Schedule 11; and*

*(b) Whether the person to whom the statutory acknowledgement is made is an affected person under Section 95E*

*(3) Notify the application to each affected group identified under subsection (2) and each affected person identified under subsection (3)”*

With regard to Step 1, the footprint of the proposed structures is outside the CMA, therefore notification is not required for either Protected Customary Rights or Customary Marine Title Groups stated in Step 1. However, ground disturbance is proposed for an area of historic significance to iwi, therefore consultation has been undertaken with the local hapū management committee, who represent Ngāti Korokoro, Ngāti Wharara and Te Pouka. They are best placed to provide advice on potential effects to cultural heritage of the proposed works. The Applicants intend that this consultation will be an ongoing process, however no formal feedback has been received at this point. Any information or reporting arising from this consultation will be provided to the Consent Authority

as it is available. No additional notification to these groups is considered required at this point and Step 2 applies as below:

*“Step 2: if not required by step 1, limited notification precluded in certain circumstances*

- (4) Determine whether the application meets either of the criteria set out in subsection (6) and,*
- (a) If the answer is yes, go to step 4 (step 3 does not apply); and*
- (b) If the answer is no, go to step 3*
- (5) The criteria for step 2 are as follows:*
  - (a) The application is for a resource consent for 1 or more activities, and each activity is subject to a rule or national environmental standard that precludes limited notification:*
  - (b) The application is for a resource consent for either or both of the following, but no other, activities:*
    - (i) A controlled activity that requires consent under a district plan (other than a subdivision of land):*
    - (ii) A prescribed activity”*

With regard to Step 2, the application is for a Resource Consent for more than 1 activity, and there is no rule or environmental standard precluding limited notification for these activities. The Application is for activities other than Controlled or Prescribed Activities, with an overall Discretionary Status. Therefore, the application meets neither of the criteria set out in Step 2 above and Step 3 applies as below:

*“Step 3: if not precluded by step 2, certain other affected persons must be notified*

- (6) Determine whether, in accordance with Section 95E, the following persons are affected persons:*
  - (a) In the case of a boundary activity, an owner of an allotment with an infringed boundary; and*
  - (b) In the case of any activity prescribed under section 360H(1)(b), a prescribed person in respect of the proposed activity.*
- (7) In the case of any other activity, determine whether a person is an affected person in accordance with Section 95E*
- (8) Notify each affected person identified under subsections (7) and (8) of the application”*

With regard to Step 3, the proposed Resource Consent is neither a boundary activity nor an activity prescribed under Section 360H(1)(b). With respect to Section 95E, it must be determined whether there are any affected persons in relation to the activity. This includes consideration of owners of adjacent properties. Under Section 95E, *“a person is an affected person if the consent authority decides*

*that the activity's adverse effects on the person are minor or more than minor (but are not less than minor)."*

The potential effects on the adjacent property owners to the site have been assessed in Section 8.0 and demonstrated to be minor. Accordingly, consultation with these parties is not considered to be required.

Therefore, the application meets neither of the criteria set out in Step 3 and Step 4 applies as below:

*"Step 4: further notification in special circumstances*

*(9) Determine whether special circumstances exist in relation to the application that warrant notification of the application to any other persons not already determined to be eligible for limited notification under this section (excluding persons assessed under Section 95E as not being affected persons), and,-*

*(a) If the answer is yes, notify these persons; and*

*(b) If the answer is no, do not notify anyone else"*

With regard to Step 4, it has been determined under Step 4 of Section 95A that special circumstances do not exist in relation to the application, and the same conclusion applies in this instance. Therefore, pursuant to Section 95B Subsection 10, there are no other persons determined to be eligible for limited notification, and no notification of the application is required.

## **Appendix C**

# **Detailed Statutory Assessment**

1918– Ōmāpere Seawall - AEE





## Northland Regional Soil and Water Plan

### C1. Land Disturbance within the Riparian Management Zone – Assessment Criteria provided by Section 36.4

| <b>Assessment Criteria 36.4</b> |  | <b>Comment</b>   |
|---------------------------------|--|--|
| <i>a</i>                        | <i>The scale, method and timing of the land disturbance activity and the nature of the surrounding catchment.</i>  | <p>The land disturbance activity comprises re-shaping of a coastal dune. Following construction of the seawall, approximately 3-4m of the upper dune will remain over-steep above the structure, along approximately 100m of the coastline.</p> <p>This will be re-shaped using an excavator to a more stable 1(vert):2(horiz) batter, and will primarily comprise reducing the height of the upper dune and respreading this material to the foreshore below the seawall.</p> <p>The works will be undertaken immediately following construction of the seawall, and due to the simplicity of the work will be quick to undertake (approximately 1-2 days), with no material needing to be removed from site.</p> |
| <i>b</i>                        | <i>The proximity of the land disturbance activity to any water body, the nature and sensitivity of the water body and any associated values and the likely effects on that water body</i>  | <p>The work is to be undertaken on a coastal dune immediately adjacent to the coastal area. The material to be disturbed comprises unconsolidated dune sands, and more consolidated sandstone. This material is already exposed in the dune scarp and due to the presence of the seawall is not at risk of further wave attack during the earthworks.</p> <p>The risk of exacerbated sedimentation of the adjacent Harbour due to mobilised silt is considered to be low due to the composition of this material</p>   |
| <i>c</i>                        | <i>The proximity of the land disturbance activity to any areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna that meet the criteria in Appendix 13B, any outstanding or significant natural feature identified in a regional or district plan, any known archaeological site or historic feature, waahi tapu or urupa; and any effects on them</i> | <p>The dune is currently sparsely vegetated. The re-shaped dune will be replanted with native dune-binding species.</p> <p>Consultation has been initiated with the local hapū management committee and this consultation is expected to be ongoing.</p>   |

1918 – Omapere Seawall



|          |  |   |
|----------|--|---|
| <i>d</i> | <i>The expected efficiency of sediment control measures and any other mitigation measures.</i>   | No sediment control measures are considered to be required due to the type of material being re-shaped being material that is already exposed, and is a combination of dune sands and cemented sand   |
| <i>e</i> | <i>The removal and/or any retention of vegetation and the expected efficiency of any revegetation and/or rehabilitation programme.</i> | Significant re-vegetation of the re-shaped dune is proposed, which is not currently practicable due to the progressive erosion. This planting will be undertaken in the first planting season following the works. To assist in the establishment of this vegetation two lines of wind fencing are proposed which will reduce the risk of dune blowouts as these plants are establishing, and assist in minimising mortality of these plants as they establish on the exposed dune face   |
| <i>f</i> | <i>The adequacy of any proposed monitoring programme to assess the effects of the activity on the environment.</i>                     | It is proposed that maintenance conditions be imposed on the planting, with the format of this as follows (or similar):<br><i>"Within the first planting season following the completion of all earthworks, planting as shown on the Davis Coastal Consultants 'Planting Plan' File No 1918 / Sheet No 07 / Rev – dated 12.08.2020 will be undertaken. Following this all new plantings shall be maintained for a minimum of three years and any new plantings that die or decline over this three year period shall be replaced. The replacement plants shall be of the same species, grade and size as the original specimens and planted no later than the following planting season (May to August)".</i> |
| <i>g</i> | <i>The practicality of alternative methods to undertake the activity and their likelihood of having reduced environmental effects.</i> | The armouring has been demonstrated as the best practicable option for the site given the existing issues present. The earthworks proposed are necessary to allow planting to be established on the dune above the structure. The establishment of the planting is a key mitigating feature of the work as it will provide positive ecological benefit to the dune system following the works   |

1918 – Omapere Seawall



## Proposed Northland Regional Plan – Appeals Version Aug 2020

### C2. Policies for Hard Protection Structures D.6.1 – D.6.2

| <b>Policies D.6.1 – Appropriateness of hard protection structures</b>     |   | <b>Comment</b>  |
|---|---|---|
| 1   | <i>alternative responses to the hazard (including soft protection measures, restoration or enhancement of natural defences against coastal hazards and abandonment of assets) are demonstrated to be impractical or have greater adverse effects on the environment, or</i> | The Options Assessment undertaken in Section 5.0 has reviewed the various alternative approaches to the erosion issue, including relocation of the threatened dwellings and 'soft' engineering approaches. These have been shown to either not address the issue or produce undesirable outcomes for the subject properties.  |
| 2   | <i>they are the only practical means to protect:</i>  |   |
| c   | <i>concentrations of existing vulnerable development, and</i>   | The proposal includes two adjacent property owners working together to address an issue which will provide a more cohesive structural approach than individual property owners  |
| d   | <i>they provide a better outcome for the local community, district or region, compared to no hard protection structure, and the works form part of a long-term hazard management strategy, which represents the best practicable option for the future.</i>                 | With reference to existing structures elsewhere on the coastline, the existing hazard management strategy in place is to undertake armouring to either protect dwellings seaward of the Highway, or to protect the Highway itself. Therefore the proposal is in accordance with the current management of the issue of the retreating coastal dune on the Ōmapere / Opononi coastline |
| <b>Policies D.6.2 – Design and location of hard protection structures</b> |   |   |
| 1   | <i>be located as far landward as possible in order to retain existing natural defences against coastal hazards as much as possible, and</i>   | The new seawall will be located at the base of the existing dune, and will involve revegetation of a significant area of the upper dune. This revegetation work will restore the natural defence of the upper dune to protect against blowouts and wind blown erosion   |
| 2   | <i>be designed and constructed by a suitably qualified and experienced professional, and</i>  | The wall has been designed by Davis Coastal Consultants who have a nearly 20 year history designing coastal protection works at a number of different locations around New Zealand  |

1918 – Omapere Seawall



|   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| 3 | <i>incorporate the use of soft protection measures where practical, and</i>  | Due to the steep progressively eroding dune face softer protection measures such as replanting or renourishment are not considered to be practicable. Due to the relatively open nature of the coastline any renourished material would be reasonably rapidly re-distributed to the adjacent coastline and would therefore require headland control structures (groynes) to retain this material for any length of time |
| 4 | <i>be designed to take into account the nature of the coastal hazard risk and how it might change over at least a 100-year time-frame, including the projected effects of a sea level rise, using the latest national guidance and best available information.</i> | Climate change over the 100 year timescale, using the current best guidance from the Ministry for the Environment, has been factored into the design of the seawall   |

1918 – Omapere Seawall

## **Appendix D**

# **Iwi Consultation**

1918– Ōmāpere Seawall - AEE



**Sam Scott-Kelly**

---

**From:** Matt Clutterbuck <mj.clutterbuck@gmail.com>  
**Sent:** Wednesday, 16 September 2020 2:55 p.m.  
**To:** sam@daviscoastal.co.nz  
**Subject:** Fwd: FW: Omapere - Seawall - Drawing Set  
**Attachments:** image001.jpg; 1918-02 266 SH12 Omapere-Resource Consent Set.pdf

Hi Sam,

Please see below an email i sent to Alan Hessel. I also sent the plans as supplied by yourself. below is also abit more information Alan spoke to me about.

As part of this application, it is important to me that consultation is made to all stakeholders and kaitiaki. Having grown up in Hokianga and my parents still living in Broadwood, I know alot of Hokiangas history and importance. Before submitting this application, as land owner i have made contact with Alan Hassell and talked him through what we are wanting to achieve and build. Alan is a member of the Hapu Management committee which represents Ngati Korokoro, Ngati Wharara and Te Pouka.

Alan explained to me the importance and cultural significance of the Waihuka burial reserve and the significance of the area our property is located; with the remains of the chief and his two children on the point north of our boundary. In recent times, Alan said John Claracich has been recovering any remains that become exposed exposed and relocating them to a local uru pa.

Alan spoke positively about what we are requesting consent for and indicated that the hapu management committee might be more favorable to this seawall as it will protect in area of cultural significance. I have sent the plans to Alan and hope to catch up with him when we next go home. I have asked Alan to review and advise if these plans need to be moified to further protect the area where Nuku Tawhiti, Morewarewa and Papatuanuku are buried.

Alan has agreed to be contacted by the groups involved in this project and council. We will also be using local contractors and suppliers who know the cultural significance of this area.

Alan Hessel's contact details are [gildahessel@xtra.co.nz](mailto:gildahessel@xtra.co.nz) and phone number is 094058832. He is best to contact via phone.

Please feel free to contact me anytime to discuss this application.

Kind regards,  
Matt clutterbuck  
021304363  
[Mj.clutterbuck@gmail.com](mailto:Mj.clutterbuck@gmail.com)

----- Forwarded message -----

**From:** Matt Clutterbuck <[mj.clutterbuck@gmail.com](mailto:mj.clutterbuck@gmail.com)>  
**Date:** Mon, Aug 31, 2020 at 7:58 AM  
**Subject:** Fwd: FW: Omapere - Seawall - Drawing Set  
**To:** <[gildahessel@xtra.co.nz](mailto:gildahessel@xtra.co.nz)>

Morena Alan,

Thanks you for your time on the phone last week, I really appreciated it and it was good for me to get a better understanding about the Waihuka burial reserve and the significance of the area our property is located with the remains of the chief and his two children.

As mentioned, I grew up in Broadwood. Mum and Dad are still on the farm there and have been there for 40years. I now live in Tauranga, but have always wanted to have a property back home so our kids can experience the life we had growing up in Hokianga, its also a place that hopefully my parents use more as they get older.

We are going through the consent process for a retaining wall in conjunction with our neighbour, Tony Petrie through a firm Davis Coastal Constructions. They are based in Orewa and the guy leading the project is Sam, he was a flat mate of my brothers at uni and has links back to Broadwood also, I think his Dad lived there for a period of time.

Thank you for agreeing to allow me to put your contact details on our submission as a representative of the Hapu Management committee representing Ngati Korokoro, Ngati Wharara and Te Pouka. Please see the proposed seawall plans attached, if these need to be modified to further protect the area where Nuku Tawhiti, Morewarewa and Papatuanuku.

Please feel free to call me anytime to discuss, my number is 021304363. We hope to get up soon as it would be good to meet up in person. However, i am not keen to travel too much with this COVID hanging around and we definitely would hate to bring it to the home if by some chance we picked it up on the way North. Tony Petrie might touch base with you next time he is up to further discuss these.

Kind regards,

Matt Clutterbuck

---

**Subject:** Omapere - Seawall - Drawing Set

Hi Matt,

As discussed – Resource Consent set attached.

Pretty similar to what you've seen already, rock specification included, and a planting plan at the rear of the set.

We are progressing the AEE and will aim to lodge with both Council's as soon as practicable. Keep us updated with the iwi consultation so we can include this in the documentation.

Regards,

**Sam Scott-Kelly**

Coastal Engineer



**Davis Coastal Consultants Ltd.**

**PO Box 185**

## **Appendix E** **Status of** **Esplanade Reserve**

1918– Ōmāpere Seawall - AEE

**Sam Scott-Kelly**

---

**From:** Matt Clutterbuck <matt.clutterbuck@bayleystauranga.co.nz>  
**Sent:** Thursday, 12 September 2019 3:33 p.m.  
**To:** Sam Scott-Kelly  
**Subject:** FW: Esplanade Res adjoining 264 and 266 SH 12

Hi Sam,

Please see below, might be of use.

Cheers,

Matt

Matt Clutterbuck  
Sales Manager, Bayleys Country  
Bay of Plenty

P: 07 571 4674 | M: 021 304 363 | F: 07 578 2119 | Visit: [www.bayleys.co.nz](http://www.bayleys.co.nz)  
Bayleys Tauranga, 247 Cameron Road, Tauranga, New Zealand  
Success Realty Ltd. MREINZ, Licensed under the Real Estate Agents Act 2008

**REINZ**REAL ESTATE  
INSTITUTE OF  
NEW ZEALAND**2019 REINZ AWARDS FOR EXCELLENCE**  
Medium Rural Office of the Year**BAYLEYS**IN ASSOCIATION WITH  
**Knight  
Frank**Make-A-Wish  
NEW ZEALAND**Airpoints**

**New Government Legislation:** The introduction of the Anti-Money Laundering and Countering Financing of Terrorism Act 2009 to the real estate sector means that we will be asking clients for more information from 1 January 2019 - [Learn more](#)

**Statement of Passing Over:** This information has been supplied by the vendor or the vendor's agents and Success Realty Limited (Bayleys) is merely passing over this information as supplied to us. We cannot guarantee its accuracy as we have not checked, audited, or reviewed the information and all intending purchasers are advised to conduct their own due diligence investigation into this information. Where you have been supplied with a Council Property File or a LIM Report, please note there may be matters relating to pre-1992 consents or permits in this file which may need further investigation in order to determine their relevance. To the maximum extent permitted by law we do not accept any responsibility to any party for the accuracy or use of the information herein.

If you would prefer not to receive any information from me by email, please [click here](#). This email is intended solely for the use of the addressee and may contain information that is confidential or subject to legal professional privilege. If you receive this email in error please immediately notify the sender.

---

**From:** ANDRE & ROBIN LA BONTE <labonte@xtra.co.nz>  
**Sent:** Monday, 5 August 2019 1:48 PM  
**To:** Kay Meekings <Kay.Meekings@fndc.govt.nz>  
**Subject:** Re: Esplanade Res adjoining 264 and 266 SH 12

Hello Kay,

Thank you for the information and analysis. You have answered out questions.

Kind regards,

Andre' & Robin

On 05 August 2019 at 13:16 Kay Meekings <[Kay.Meekings@fndc.govt.nz](mailto:Kay.Meekings@fndc.govt.nz)> wrote:

Hi Andre and Robin,

In reply to your query "do the boundaries of these parcels shift landward with progressive erosion or are they potentially lost through erosion as the MHWS boundary moves landward?"

**They are potentially lost through erosion as the MHWS boundary moves landward.**

The status of the reserved parcels:

- Lot 2 DP 91297, Local Purpose (Esplanade )Reserve vested in Council on deposit of DP 91297, subject to the Reserves Act 1977.
- Lot 5 DP 196729, Local Purpose (Esplanade )Reserve vested in Council on deposit of DP 196729, subject to the Reserves Act 1977.

Having looked at the Marine and Coastal Area Act 2011(MACA Act), DP 91297, DP 196729 and Office of Treaty Settlements advice to Local Government: <https://tearawhiti.govt.nz/assets/MACA-docs/13b81079fa/Part-2-Interests-in-land-and-structures-residual-Crown-functions-public-rights-subdivision-and-reclamations.pdf> - see paragraph on "Land added to the CMCA."

The titles show the parcels have moveable water boundaries. They are not fixed water boundaries. This is determined as the seaward boundary is described as MHW and MHWS rather than a surveyed line.

MACA Act provides:

Interpretation: common marine and coastal area means the marine and coastal area other than—(iii) a reserve within the meaning of section 2(1) of the Reserves Act 1977

S11 Special status of common marine and coastal area - (4)Whenever, after the commencement of this Act, whether as a result of erosion or other natural occurrence, any land owned by the Crown or a local authority becomes part of the common marine and coastal area, the title of the Crown or the local authority as owner of that land is, by this section, divested. *(This applies only to the portion that is inundated up to the MHWS)*

S13 Boundary changes of marine and coastal area - (2) However, if, because of a change caused by a natural occurrence or process, any land, other than a road, that is owned by the Crown or a local authority becomes part of the marine and coastal area, then that land becomes part of the common



marine and coastal area (even if that land consists of or is included in a piece of land defined by fixed boundaries).

Conclusion: Lot 2 DP 91297 is completely under water and is now part of the Common Marine and Coastal Area. The title is completely divested.

Lot 5 DP 196729 is partially under water and that portion is lost to the Common Marine and Coastal Area. The title is divested for that portion of land now below MHWS.

The parcels lose the land to the Common Marine and Coastal Area as the MHWS mark rises.

I hope this helps.

Give me a call if you wish to discuss.

Regards



**Kay Meekings**  
Property Legalisation Officer

Corporate Services, Far North District Council | **24-hour Contact Centre** 0800 920 029  
ddi +6494015294 | [Kay.Meekings@fndc.govt.nz](mailto:Kay.Meekings@fndc.govt.nz)  
[Website](#) | [Facebook](#) | [LinkedIn](#) | [Careers](#)

---

Get it done online at your convenience, visit our website - [www.fndc.govt.nz](http://www.fndc.govt.nz)

Attention: The information contained in this email (including any attachments) is intended solely for the addressee(s). It is confidential and may be legally privileged. If you have received this email in error you must not use, copy, disclose or distribute it or any information in it. Please simply notify the sender and delete or destroy all copies of the email immediately. Unless formally stated, this e-mail and any attachments do not necessarily reflect the views of the Far North District Council. The Far North District Council accepts no responsibility for any interception of, or changes to, our email after it leaves us. We do not accept responsibility for any viruses or similar carried with our email, or any effects our email may have on the recipients computer system or network.

Far North District Council | Te Kaunihera o Tai Tokerau Ki Te Raki  
Ph. 09 401 5200 | Fax. 09 401 2137 | Email. [ask.us@fndc.govt.nz](mailto:ask.us@fndc.govt.nz)  
Address: Memorial Avenue, Private Bag 752, Kaikohe 0440, New Zealand

Please consider the environment before printing this email.

## **Appendix F** **Communication** **With LINZ**

1918– Ōmāpere Seawall - AEE

**Sam Scott-Kelly**

---

**From:** Glen Rowe <growe@linz.govt.nz>  
**Sent:** Tuesday, 29 September 2020 9:13 a.m.  
**To:** sam@daviscoastal.co.nz  
**Subject:** Hokianga Hbr - MHWS query

Kia ora Sam,

Thank you for your enquiry about MHWS in Hokianga Harbour.

You have quoted values for MHWS at Opononi/Omapere given by T&T in terms of OTP. T&T must have made some assumptions to come up with those values as there are no heights in terms of OTP in the Hokianga region so I can't tell you how they got those numbers.

You have tried to find a relationship between TCD and OTP through NZVD16. The differences between NZVD16 and TCD/OTP are valid only at AGMH and DJM9 respectively. As NZVD16 is not a plane the offsets to TCD and OTP are not the same everywhere. As you have found, Northland is out of bounds as far as Taranaki Vertical Datum is concerned so our online converter is unable to calculate an offset. Therefore there is no correct conversion factor between TCD and OTP and, anyway, at a fundamental level relating those two systems does not make sense as they are spatially disparate.

**Therefore, can LINZ please advise what is the correct conversion factor to apply, in order to convert between TCD (source data) and OTP (target output data).**

As described above, LINZ is unable to provide this information.

For DY1B the reference to MSL is an approximation. Historically height network adjustments were either based on a defined datum or something close to MSL and designated as such. We have tied EVXA to sea level data recorded at the Opononi wharf and MSL is 2.50m below that mark (MHWS is 1.35m below EVXA). As I have said above, there are no OTP heights in the Hokianga area but from the conversion tool OTP comes in 0.054m below NZVD16. Using the above information and the geodetic database, I make MSL and MHWS 0.18m and 1.33m above NZVD16 respectively. Using the conversion tool offset for OTP, MSL and MHWS are 0.23m and 1.38m above OTP respectively.

Ngā mihi nui,

**Glen Rowe**

**Technical Leader Sea Level Data**

New Zealand Hydrographic Authority

[growe@linz.govt.nz](mailto:growe@linz.govt.nz) | DDI 04 460 0569



Wellington Office, Level 7, Radio New Zealand House, 155 The Terrace  
PO Box 5501, Wellington 6145, New Zealand  
[www.linz.govt.nz](http://www.linz.govt.nz) | [data.linz.govt.nz](http://data.linz.govt.nz)



---

This message contains information, which may be in confidence and may be subject to legal privilege. If you are not the intended recipient, you must not peruse, use, disseminate, distribute or copy this message. If you have received this message in error, please notify us immediately (Phone 0800 665

**Appendix G**  
**Certificate of  
Title**

1918– Ōmāpere Seawall - AEE

D 519985. 2 cons

**FAR NORTH DISTRICT COUNCIL****THE RESOURCE MANAGEMENT ACT 1991****SECTION 221 : CONSENT NOTICE****REGARDING RC 1960605**

The subdivision of

Lot 3 DP 91297

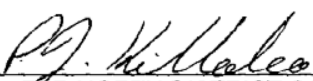
North Auckland Registry.

PURSUANT to Section 221 for the purposes of Section 224 of the Resource Management Act 1991, this Consent Notice is issued by the FAR NORTH DISTRICT COUNCIL to the effect that conditions described in the schedule below are to be complied with on a continuing basis by the subdividing owner and the subsequent owners after the deposit of the survey plan, and is to be registered on the titles of Lots 1,2,3, & 4 DP 196729.

**SCHEDULE**

- Any building erected is to be re-locatable for coastal hazard reasons.
- No buildings shall be erected closer than 40 metres from mean high water springs as shown on the Haigh Consultants report dated 18 December 1996.
- Any dwelling erected will be made subject to section 36 of the Building Act 1991 stating that Council will accept no liability for any loss or damage to any building as a result of any adverse coastal process.
- Parts of the sites may contain fill and require specific engineering design for foundations.

SIGNED:

  
by the FAR NORTH DISTRICT COUNCIL  
under delegated authority:  
RESOURCE CONSENTS MANAGER

DATED at **KAIKOHE** this 23<sup>rd</sup> day of June 2000

RC 1960605

SRM\CERT\3bridge221

② CONO-88







**RECORD OF TITLE  
UNDER LAND TRANSFER ACT 2017  
FREEHOLD  
Search Copy**



**Identifier** **41164**  
**Land Registration District** **North Auckland**  
**Date Issued** 21 October 2002

**Prior References**

NA124C/657      NA124C/658

**Estate** Fee Simple  
**Area** 1904 square metres more or less  
**Legal Description** Lot 1 Deposited Plan 310507

**Registered Owners**

Matthew James Clutterbuck and Philippa Louise Harvey

**Interests**

D519985.2 Consent Notice pursuant to Section 221(1) Resource Management Act 1991 - 3.7.2000 at 2.55 pm

Subject to a stormwater right (in gross) over part marked A on DP 310507 in favour of Far North District Council created by Transfer D519985.6 - 3.7.2000 at 2.55 pm

The easements created by Transfer D519985.6 are subject to Section 243 (a) Resource Management Act 1991

D616625.1 Gazette Notice (NZ Gazette 9.11.2000 No152 p 3942) declaring part of State Highway 12 in Northland commencing at its intersection with the northern end of Waiotemarama Gorge Road at Pakanae and proceeding in a Southerly direction to its intersection with the southern end of Waiotemarama Gorge Road at Waiotemarama to be a limited access road

D616743.3 Notice pursuant to Section 91 Transit New Zealand Act 1989 - 27.6.2001 at 9.01 am

Appurtenant hereto is a right to drain sewage created by Transfer 5379959.6 - 21.10.2002 at 3:33 pm

The easements created by Transfer 5379959.6 are subject to Section 243 (a) Resource Management Act 1991

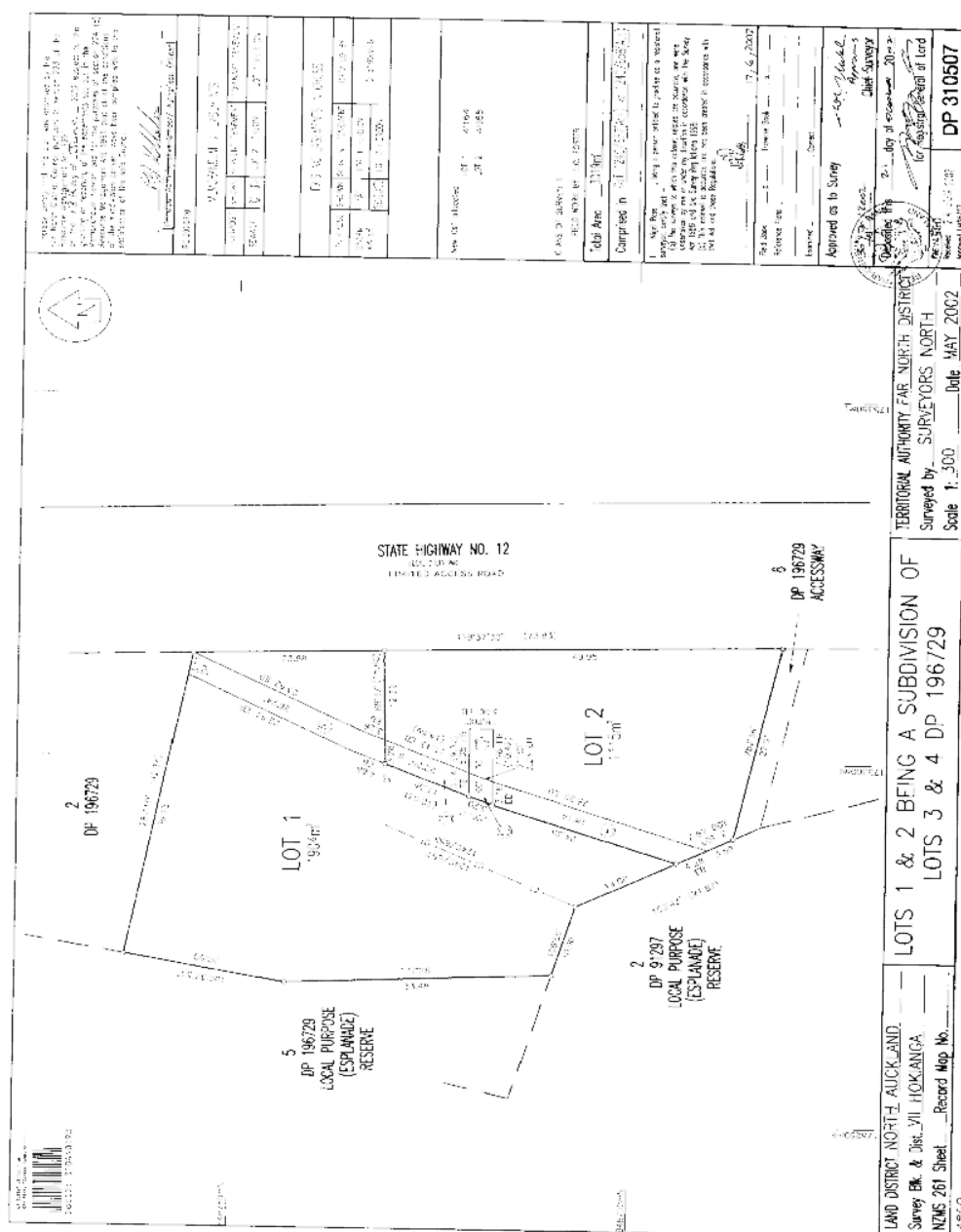
5900053.1 Notice pursuant to Section 91 Transit New Zealand Act 1989 - 16.2.2004 at 9:00 am

Transaction Id  
 Client Reference CSR-DCC

Search Copy Dated 17/09/19 9:32 am, Page 1 of 2  
 Register Only

Identifier

41164



Transaction Id  
Client Reference CSR-DCC

Search Copy Dated 17/09/19 9:32 am, Page 2 of 2  
Register Only



**Attachment 2:** Summary of relevant technical matters contained within the Assessment of Environmental Effects

The resource consent application for the proposed erosion protection structure is supported by a detailed technical assessment of the effects of the proposed seawall on coastal processes. A summary of technical matters relevant to the consideration of Council approval is given below.

**Storm effects**

The seawall has been designed with 1.8m freeboard above current 1% AEP storm tide levels and includes engineered design elements to reduce the risk of large scale erosion of dune sands behind the proposed wall. Foundation undermining is proposed to be prevented by excavating the wall 500mm into underlying harder base material. This allows for the entire loss of the existing beach in front of the structure (approximately 1.5m deep at the time of application), and lowering of 500mm of the underlying material, before the seawall is at risk of undermining.

**End erosion**

End erosion can occur as a result of wave or current differentials created by a hard protection structure transferring energy to unprotected portions of the dune or beach. The application report has provided a detailed assessment of the potential effects of end erosion associated with the proposed structure that take into account the detailed analysis of the wave environment, historic extreme water levels, sediment transport mechanisms and the existing foreshore environment. The application report sets out that the wall as proposed to be located on an alignment that is directly perpendicular to the dominant angle of wave attack and accordingly there is low risk of deflection of swash and wave energy along the wall. Incoming energy will tend to be deflected directly back out to sea given the shore normal incident angle. The applicant also proposes to bed the northern end of the wall 4m into the dune face at an angle of 90° into the backing. This will provide futureproofing for the end portion of the wall against future retreat of the coastline. This embedment can be increased as the coastline continues to retreat and imposing requirements of that nature though conditions of consent would be within the ambit of the consent authority.

**Sea level rise**

The application report provides an assessment of the proposal taking into account a sea level scenario based on the RCP 8.5 emissions scenario (i.e. the worst case scenario) in accordance

with MfE Guidelines<sup>2</sup>. Based on the RCP 8.5 emissions scenarios, those guidelines indicate a sea-level rise of 300-400mm over the next 35 years and a sea level rise of 1m within the next 100 years. The applicant has sought a term of 35 years for the coastal permit authorising the occupation of the structure within the common marine and coastal area. A 35 year assessment period is therefore appropriate.

The application report demonstrates that, for current predictions of sea-level rise over the 35 year consent term, the structure remains resilient to the extreme water level events, including wave setup. It should be noted that the report also demonstrates that the structure will be unaffected by 1% AEP storm tides up to the 1m sea level rise scenario.

---

<sup>2</sup> Ministry for the Environment (2017). *Preparing for coastal change: A summary of coastal hazards and climate change guidance for local government*.

## 6.4 ELECTED MEMBER CONFERENCE ATTENDANCE REPORT - 2021 COMMUNITY BOARDS CONFERENCE

**File Number:** A3196920

**Author:** Kim Hammond, Meetings Administrator

**Authoriser:** Aisha Huriwai, Team Leader Democracy Services

### TAKE PŪRONGO / PURPOSE OF THE REPORT

An Elected Member's attendance at a conference, course, seminar, or training event is subject to the provision of the Elected Members Allowances and Reimbursement Policy. This policy requires the Elected Member to provide a report to Council after attending an event to provide transparency to the public that ratepayer funds are being used effectively.

### WHAKARĀPOOTO MATUA / EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

- Eight Community Board members attended the April 2021 Local Government New Zealand Community Boards Conference, in Gore. The theme was Interconnected Communities – Te Kotahitanga.
- Expenses for their attendance has been included in this report.

### TŪTOHUNGA / RECOMMENDATION

**That Council note the report entitled 'Elected Member Conference Attendance Report – 2021 Community Boards Conference'.**

### 1) TĀHUHU KŌRERO / BACKGROUND

The Elected Members Allowances and Reimbursement Policy sets out the provisions which apply to an Elected Member's attendance at a conference, course, seminar, or training event.

The policy provides that each Elected Member may attend one conference or professional development event per representative body to which they are elected or appointed per annum.

The conference, course, seminar, or training event must contribute to the Member's ability to carry out Council business and be approved by His Worship the Mayor and Chief Executive Officer, or the Council, depending on the request.

Following attendance, a report must be written by the Elected Member to the next meeting of the Community Board. It was decided that Member Brown would write a report of all the members that attended.

The following Elected Members attended the Community Board Conference representing Far North District Council:

| Te Hiku Community Board     | Kaikohe-Hokianga Community Board | Bay of Islands-Whangaroa Community Board |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| Adele Gardner (Chairperson) | Mike Edmonds (Chairperson)       | Belinda Ward (Chairperson)               |
| Jaqi Brown (Deputy Chair)   | Emma Davis (Deputy Chair)        | Frank Owen (Deputy Chair)                |
|                             |                                  | Manuwai Wells                            |
|                             |                                  | Lane Ayr                                 |

### 2) MATAPAKI ME NGĀ KŌWHIRINGA / DISCUSSION AND OPTIONS

The Elected Members report attached provides feedback on what elected members have learned and the value to the organisation from attendance at the conference.



**Take Tūtohunga / Reason for the recommendation**

To provide information to Council on the consequential travel expenses, and feedback on the conference. The aim is to provide transparency and confidence to the public that ratepayer funds are being used effectively.

**3) PĀNGA PŪTEA ME NGĀ WĀHANGA TAHUA / FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS AND BUDGETARY PROVISION**

There are no financial implications or budgetary provision required because of this report.

Some costs are still yet to be invoiced so the total approximate cost to ratepayers for Chair Gardner and Member Atkinson, incurred to date is \$3935.

**ĀPITIHINGA / ATTACHMENTS**

1. **2021 Community Board Conference Report - A3196914** [↓](#) 

**Hōtaka Take Ōkawa / Compliance Schedule:**

Full consideration has been given to the provisions of the Local Government Act 2002 S77 in relation to decision making, in particular:

1. A Local authority must, in the course of the decision-making process,
  - a) Seek to identify all reasonably practicable options for the achievement of the objective of a decision; and
  - b) Assess the options in terms of their advantages and disadvantages; and
  - c) If any of the options identified under paragraph (a) involves a significant decision in relation to land or a body of water, take into account the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral land, water sites, waahi tapu, valued flora and fauna and other taonga.
2. This section is subject to Section 79 - Compliance with procedures in relation to decisions.

| <b>He Take Ōkawa / Compliance Requirement</b>   | <b>Aromatawai Kaimahi / Staff Assessment</b>   |
|---|--|
| State the level of significance (high or low) of the issue or proposal as determined by the <a href="#">Council's Significance and Engagement Policy</a>  | This is an information only report.  |
| State the relevant Council policies (external or internal), legislation, and/or community outcomes (as stated in the LTP) that relate to this decision.   | The recommendation is consistent with the Elected Members Allowances and Reimbursement Policy.   |
| State whether this issue or proposal has a District wide relevance and, if not, the ways in which the appropriate Community Board's views have been sought.   | Members from all three Community Boards attended this conference.  |
| State the possible implications for Māori and how Māori have been provided with an opportunity to contribute to decision making if this decision is significant and relates to land and/or any body of water. | Members Brown (Te Hiku Community Board) and Members Wells (Bay of Islands-Whangaroa Community Board) did attend the Māori Caucus breakfast which focused on Māori within local government. |
| Identify persons likely to be affected by or have an interest in the matter, and how you have given consideration to their views or preferences (for example – youth, the aged and those with disabilities).  | This is an information only report.  |
| State the financial implications and where budgetary provisions have been made to support this decision.  | There are no financial implications or the need for budgetary provisions.  |
| Chief Financial Officer review.   | The Chief Financial Officer has not reviewed this report.  |

## Report Community Boards Conference, Gore April 22-25<sup>th</sup> April 2021



In attendance from Far North District Council: Adele Gardner, Jaqi Brown – Te Hiku Community Board, Mike Edmonds, Emma Davis - Kaikohe-Hokianga Community Board and Manuwai Wells, Belinda Ward, Frank Owen and Lane Ayre - Bay of Islands-Whangaroa Community Board.

The major conference themes were climate change, localism, Māori engagement, the future of local government. The report includes conference introductions for each speaker, whakaro/reflections from the attending board members and key questions highlighted in yellow.

### **Māori caucus breakfast**

The conference started with a Māori caucus breakfast session attended by Members Jaqi Brown and Manuwai Wells. This was an opportunity to whakawhanaungatanga and discuss the matter of the day pertaining to Māori within local government.

**Whakaaro/reflections:** Discussions identified areas for improvement and growth in Local Government spaces across Aotearoa, centring around more meaningful engagement with whanau, hapū and iwi across the board (from the approach to decision making, delivery to the experience of outcomes). Majority of Māori elected members present noted poor diversity, adding that they were the only Māori voice on their boards/councils and often the youngest member attending (mid to late 40s).

**Key patai/questions:** If our Far North District Council and Community boards choose not to support Māori wards – what other pathways are we proposing/investing in to ensure meaningful participation and engagement with whanau, hapū and iwi? How else will we ensure Māori have an authentic voice that is heard in the Far North?

**Key kupu:** Lonely voices, Priorities, Pakeha

### **Speakers**

#### **Our collective home - Sophie Handford.**

*Sophie talked about her role as the founder of School Strike 4 Climate NZ and coordinated the movement alongside other youth during its first year in which 170,000 young people marched to highlight the Climate Crisis. She first got interested in climate change after a letter from council to her parents about sea level rises that could affect her home. This sparked a flame to find out more about what was causing the water to rise. She graduated from Kāpiti College in 2018 and has now gone on to become New Zealand's youngest elected Council member on the Kāpiti Coast District Council. As she is the Paekakariki - Raumati Ward Councillor, and also sits on the Paekakariki Community Board. She is determined to be able to say she has done everything in her power to create a more beautiful world for generations to come.*

**Whakaaro/reflections:** Councillor Handford shared the whakapapa behind her journey to becoming an elected member for her Paekakariki communities- encouraging us to speak a legacy of acknowledgement, empowerment and love to our young people and for our environment. Enjoyed her insights into impacting change from the bottom up through the school strike 4 climate kaupapa – inspo for reclaiming our localism/Tino Rangatiratanga roots.

She had a team of 20+ volunteers supporting her campaign and is probably going to step down next term and mentor other people into local govt. Laid down a very clear challenge to act now for the planet.

A well prepared and presented session. Sophie is an inspiring young woman councillor. Her story is inspirational. Reinforced the need to ensure we encourage and support able young people to get involved in local government. However, given the time commitment required, combined with the low income payable to community board members, the ability for younger people with fulltime jobs to be involved as an elected community board member is difficult.

**Key patai/questions:** “What kind of ancestor will I be?”. Sophie asked us to consider this patai during her presentation. She was elected at 18, is now 20, and speaks with an awareness of someone much older. Hearing her words, challenged me to confront my own unconscious bias about young people becoming elected members – who am I to say they need my version of “experience, knowledge and skills” to be effective in this space. “What can you do for the collective good? How are Community Boards encouraging and supporting youth voice?”

**Key kupu:** Connection, Taiao, Vision, Intergenerational equity

### **From inconvenient truths to disastrous misconceptions – whistle blowing on the meaning of sustainability. – Ken Ross.**

- 1.
2. Ken’s presentation focussed on the world crisis where we in NZ are now consuming approximately 4 earths worth of resources every year. Ken talked about the history of climate change and that we are no longer sustainable as a planet. He discussed among other models the Doughnut economy whereby environment/nature is prioritised, then society, then the economy.
- 3.

**Whakaaro/reflections:** Enjoyed Ken’s korero – nothing new to Māori, was interesting to see a lot of our Non-Māori attendees react to the confronting reality that we can’t keep screwing over Papatuanuku for money without consequences. Ken knows his audience well and brought home the practical and personal cost of internal disconnection. Very well researched and presented. The points Ken raised regarding the relative relationship between the economy, society, and the environment is a difficult one for community board members to influence in an effective way given the limited delegated authority that community boards have. He reflected on the 1972 Stockholm Declaration and how we are only now starting to take this seriously. His takeaway quote “we are carers of this planet”.

**Key patai/questions:** “Where are the mosquitoes? Where are the spiders?” Ken noted the demise of our eco-systems in simple, real ways. Do we care?

Ken’s challenges for the conference were “What are we actively doing to ensure we are doing good for our environment? It is time for action. He quoted “You will find your purpose in life in selfless service to others”

**Key kupu:** Kuare, Western, Economy, Apathy

*Ken Ross holds a double major B.Sc. in Zoology and Geography and an M.Sc. (Hons) in Behavioural Ecology. This eclectic mix of subjects has shaped him, somewhat intentionally, as a 'Human Ecologist'. Human Ecology (how humans live within their lands) has been the theme of Ken's life through careers in teaching, tertiary and adventure education and the maritime tourism industry. In 2005, when the Far North District Council was setting up a 'Community Development Department', Ken grasped an opportunity to work in Community Development in the highly variable and sometimes, truly isolated communities of the Far North, and his passion holds him in this role today. Ken has a deep understanding of the 'sustainability challenges' facing humanity, the impacts of the 1989 Local Government Amalgamations on the communities of the Far North, and a unique perspective on how to 'solve for pattern' to ameliorate these challenges. It is probable, that well before you heard the word 'Localism' or even before it was coined, Ken was working with Far North communities and helping them to create Community Plans, in which their aspirations for 'Tinorangatiratanga', 'Subsidiarity' and higher levels of self-determination and community governance were being discussed and written into their respective Community Plans.*

### **Hokonui Huanui - Lisa McKenzie**

Lisa is a bubbly character, and passionate about shifting people towards their goals. The Hokonui Huanui project targets young people from 0-24, their whanau and caregivers. The Huanui is symbolic of a highway and the many on and off ramps we need. They look at early identification and responses, skills, and wellbeing, maximising resources and using navigators to navigate with health, social and employment services. It is a collaborative partnership with MSD, Police, Justice, Education, Health and the initiative started as a social sector trial, then morphed through a PGF grant and help from Health. They operate within an integration framework and have a job training hub for all the community.

**Whakaaro/reflections:** A well-presented passionate session. Lisa is very enthusiastic about the work she is doing, a real doer. Working collaboratively is the only way. Potential to copy and paste this model into Te Hiku as similar small-town issues. Potential for models like this to be adapted across the Far North District Council, to create synergy and better utilise resources. However, couldn't see how Community Boards can have significant role in this area, given their limitations currently.

**Key patai/questions:** Lisa's message to the conference was "How can communities be responsive and flexible to all who need support?"

**Key kupu:** Coordination, hope, collective outcomes for all

*Lisa is currently employed as the Hokonui Huanui Lead. She has been involved in various socially focused community development initiatives in the Gore District over the last 20 years, including the establishment and development of the Community Networking Trust, developing policies and processes for the Youth Worker Trust, developing a model of service provision and delivery of the Family Innovations initiative, was the Gore District Social Sector Trial Lead and most recently supported the scoping, development and delivery of the Huanui project.*

*Lisa has worked at the coal face in the social sector with roles as a Youth Worker, Strengthening Families Coordinator, Field Worker, Family/Whānau Support Worker and as facilitator of various programmes. Working at the coal face, seeing common issues and opportunities for change drives her desire to be involved in community development, believing that often small adjustments to a system or process can have a significant positive impact. She is passionate about working collaboratively to maximise resource and get the best outcomes for individuals and the community.*

#### **4. Interconnected Communities through major disruptions and a returning CEO's lens - Jim Harland**

5. Jim's presentation was on some of the major "disrupters" and reforms that are coming that will impact on your communities. He talked about the 3 waters, RMA changes, local government representation review, technology changes and the [Quality of Life](#) project.

**Whakaaro/reflections:** Interesting and stimulating. Jim is a clear supporter of the role community boards can have in their communities. Proposed reforms to local government will be potentially either positive or negative in setting the role of community boards in the future, and we need to be at the decision making table. Our combined Community Boards need to explore and make appropriate submissions to the Local Government reform process. Jim's presentation was interesting in terms of his recent roles with both local government and Waka Kotahi NZ Transport Agency. Although he did not labour the point, I felt his view that Governments ultimate aim is to do another "three waters reform" and remove roading from local government control is potentially imminent and what would this mean for local government

**Patai/Questions:** Are we aware of the impact of these changes and challenges? How does transport fit into this picture? Who do you need a strong relationship with and how do you make this happen?

*Jim is the newly appointed Chief Executive of the Waimakariri District Council. Prior to this Jim was the Director Regional Relationships - Southern, Waka Kotahi NZ Transport Agency. He has been involved in a number of projects including chairing the Visiting Drivers Project, the Kaikoura Restoration Liaison Group and the Road Controlling Authority Forum and was a member of the Stronger Christchurch Infrastructure Rebuilding Team Board. Jim led a Ministerial Road Maintenance Taskforce (2011-2012) and chairs the Road Efficiency Group which is responsible for implementing the findings. Before joining Waka Kotahi, Jim was Chief Executive of Dunedin City Council. This followed senior roles in local government and the private sector, specialising in strategic thinking, tourism, change management and leadership of complex projects. The World Health Organisation has used Jim's expertise in understanding and leading communities on several occasions to further their Healthy Cities Initiative.*

#### **Snapshot presentations**

Snapshots of community projects from different boards. Playground and walking track in Otorohanga took the audience vote.

#### **Whakaaro/reflections:**

An interesting insight into some of the work being undertaken by various community boards around the country all delivered in 7 minutes each.

The Otorohanga story was a great tale of adversity, the whole project was funded through a fine for an environmental breach, the community rallied and with local donation made this extraordinary feature park happen. Many similar projects and challenges to those here in the Far-North. Pleased to note that the work of the Kerikeri Domain working group, for example, was more probably bigger and comprehensive than many of the projects highlighted.

#### **Engaging Iwi - Matu-Taera Coleman-Clark.**

6. Engaging Iwi is a challenge for most Councils and this presentation shed some light on how this could become a useful and productive process for all.

#### **Whakaaro/reflections:**

A useful and interesting session. One member noted that during dinner several people at his table were irritated by the presentation and in one case felt personally offended by the comments made



by presenters. This indicated that we still have a long way to go. Overall impression was that we need to listen and go out to Māori at the marae, whenua and be ongoing. Consultation is the end product – not the beginning!

Councils need to revise the terminology of roles we use when referring to Māori i.e. Māori Liaison officer. We do not Liaise with Māori, we engage.

#### **Patai/questions:**

How do we ensure Māori are engaged with effectively and in a way that is truly culturally appropriate and responsive. How do we ensure a continual korero?

*Matu is an experienced teacher, kapa haka tutor and cultural advisor of Ngati Porou, Whakatohea and Te Arawa descent. Driven by his whanau and culture, he takes pride in providing the best information and knowledge as possible. As a Teacher/Cultural Advisor with Hokonui Rūnaka, his goals are to ignite the desire for Te Āo Māori and to help open closed doors for Rangatahi. Matu was also part of "Tuia", a rangatahi driven kaupapa for Rangatahi Māori, working with the Mayors' Taskforce. In addition to his primary jobs, he also sits as an orator for many marae and a composer for many schools in Southland.*

#### **Workshops: Safer communities. – Jayne McAllister & Saniya Thompson**

*Jayne is the new coordinator for Safe in the South, she was previously a community advisor for Emergency Management Southland where she was assisting communities in community response planning and community resilience. Jayne's involvement with community is not been limited to her work, volunteering in different community organisations across the years she is now the elected Southland Area Chairperson for New Zealand Red Cross.*

*Jayne is a born and bred Southlander living in the metropolis of Invercargill with husband Ewan and a nowadays empty nest and a full fridge.*

*Saniya is a Community Connections Librarian at the Invercargill City Libraries and formerly a coordinator of Safe in the South. She was a key player in gaining accreditation of Invercargill City, Southland District and Gore District as an International Safe Community. Prior to coming to NZ from Moscow in 2014 she worked as the Director of International Affairs for the Russian Kickboxing Federation; through these experiences she truly appreciated the importance of community development and the challenges and rewards of successful cross-cultural communication. Saniya believes that her passion for the community can influence positive change. One of the ways of driving a positive change is through dance - in 2015 Saniya co-founded a pole and aerial dance studio in Invercargill where you will often find her on pole or other aerial apparatus defying the laws of gravity.*

#### **Whakaaro/reflections:**

This workshop was a bit disappointing, and the issues they have in the south pale in comparison to those in the north. One good idea was a free tool engraving workshop, where they etched in the owner's licence plate number.

#### **LGNZ Update – Stuart Crosby**

*Stuart is the President of LGNZ since July 2020 and was the Vice President from July 2017 to July 2020. He represents Zone Two on National Council and is a Councillor for Bay of Plenty Regional Council. He has been an elected representative since 1986, serving as chairman on various committees, a period as Deputy Mayor and Mayor of Tauranga City Council. Stuart has a business background both in the electrical contracting and building industry. He now devotes all of his time to council and to the wider community.*

Stuart spoke about the 4 pou of local government – socially, culturally, economically, environmentally, and how the inclusion of these signaled a new way forward. He talked of subsidiarity, finding the balance with the core services that are being centralised or have new ways of being implemented particularly water, roading and planning. There may be opportunities to collaborate with other government departments and grow initiatives like Mayors Taskforce for Jobs. Left this workshop feeling that perhaps government has a bigger agenda.

Essential that Community Boards feed into the review and reform of LGNZ. Considerations should be given to the other well beings, community boards are best placed to deliver on this. Remember that when it comes to the Three Waters, the ratepayers own the existing infrastructure and the ratepayers paid for it to be put there. How will the private water users of which there 90K in Aotearoa fit into the picture.

**BEAD the change you want to see in the world – using creativity to impact the 17 biggest challenges of today - Bridget Williams.**

*Bridget is the enthusiastic founder of social enterprise, Bead & Proceed, ([www.beadandproceed.com](http://www.beadandproceed.com)) which exists to educate people about the 17 UN Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) and inspires action towards them through creativity. She talked about the Agenda 2030 and how each of us needs a plan of action.*

*Her passion for sustainability and using creativity as a tool for innovation has made her recognised SDGs expert, assisting businesses and organisations with SDG strategic alignment and target reporting. She employs these skills to help businesses make authentic sustainable change and is renowned for her energy and enthusiasm, ensuing all staff and clients are taken on an SDG journey. As a former solicitor, Bridget thrives solving complex problems and practicing effective leadership in her governance roles. This includes being Deputy Chair of the Fendalton/Waimairi/Harewood Community Board and Trustee of the Christchurch Arts Festival.*

*Bridget is also Curator of the World Economic Forum Global Shapers Christchurch Hub and member of the Asia New Zealand Foundation Leadership Network, which has led her to become a creditable global change maker. Her efforts have been recognised and endorsed by the Rt. Hon. Helen Clark and the JCI Osaka Outstanding Young Person's Programme.*

Both her and Ken Ross talked about the book 'The Limits to Growth' from the 1970's which talked about the current situation of a finite planet.

**Whakaaro/Reflections:**

A hugely passionate young lady. A very very competent presentation. Complemented Ken's presentation very well. Again, an area that it is difficult for community boards to influence in a significant way. Common Bead themes were wai kai and equity, only downside was that the beads were manufactured in India (where's the kiwi beads?).

The 17 biggest Challenges of today presented by Bridget Williams was inspirational. She asked every person to select 5 of the 17 UN goals listed below and work on these personally, embedding them into our lives for a more sustainable, caring future.

1. No Poverty
2. Zero Hunger
3. Good Health & Well Being
4. Quality Education
5. Gender Equality
6. Clean Water & Sanitation
7. Affordable & Clean Energy
8. Decent Work & Economic Growth

9. Industry Innovation & Infrastructure
10. Reduced Inequalities
11. Sustainable cities and Communities
12. Responsible Consumption and production
13. Climate Action
14. Life below water
15. Life on land
16. Peace Justice and strong institutions
17. Partnerships for the Goals

As a Council, if we could think of all of the above when decisions are being made this may have good outcomes for the communities that we serve.

**Nga patai/questions:** Her big question for the conference – “How do we get sustainable development to the forefront”. “How do we achieve the 5 P’s People – Planet – Prosperity – Partnership – Peace” and “Leave no one behind”

### **Localism – Malcolm Alexander.**

*Malcolm was CEO of LGNZ from 2012 to 2020 and before that had a career in the energy sector and the law. During his time LGNZ’s position on localism was developed which advocated for the empowerment of democracy at a local level through the transfer of functions and funding from central government to local government. Since his departure local government has experienced several governance crises, culminating, in the case of Tauranga City Council, with the removal of elected members. Elsewhere around New Zealand, many ratepayers are being faced with the prospect of double-digit rate increases at a time when incomes are stagnant and housing costs move beyond the reach of first home buyers. In such a world, is localism still relevant?*

### **Whakaaro/Reflections:**

A useful and thought-provoking presentation. Malcolm talked about then waning support for localism across the board, and this is becoming more evident with the introduction of 3 waters. He recommended that everyone needs to read the executive summary of the RMA reform as this encapsulate where NZ is going. He argued for local delivery having less impact on environment.

Again the theme of more centralisation of local government being the Government’s desired direction came through loud and clear. Felt that as a council we need to develop our thoughts on the reform process and ensure these are fed into the reform discussions.

### **7. Local Government Reform – Mike Reid.**

*Mike has been employed at LGNZ since 1996 during which time he has worked in a diverse range of policy areas including local governance, elected member development, legislative change, social policy, relationships with Māori and local democracy. Mike completed his PhD in public policy in 2011 and is currently on the board of the Institute of Governance and Policy Studies. He speaks regularly on local government matters and has published widely.*

This session was to large extent hi-jacked by the Minister’s speech on the Friday morning announcing the reforms and the appointment of the advisory committee. It was attended by the LGNZ chair who also spoke. Strong feeling that local government has a fight on its hands to remain relevant and effective. I personally felt that LGNZ has one huge task in front of it, and that we as a council must be actively involved in that fight if we wish to remain a major force in our community.

### **Supporting small businesses to survive and thrive. – Sarah Collard.**

Sarah is the founder of the largest Facebook Group in New Zealand, Chooice (formerly New Zealand Made Products) and the co-founder and Managing Director of the e-commerce version

[Chooice.co.nz](https://chooice.co.nz). She has extensive knowledge and experience in youth participation, local government, and project & event management.

Sarah is a former elected member of the Manurewa Local Board, elected to Auckland Council when she was 20 years old and the Manager for Auckland Youth Voice, Auckland's leading network for Youth Participation. She is also a Duffy Book Role Model for low decile schools, a Board member for the YWCA Auckland and a Board member for the Open Government Expert Advisory Panel with the Public Service Commission. Sarah is a two-time Kiwibank Local Hero Medal Recipient.

#### **Whakaaro/Reflections:**

Was interesting to hear about the creation and evolution of Chooice during Lockdown level 4 to now in level 1. Having bought several items from businesses listed on Chooice, I already had some working knowledge of its value for providing lifelines for a range of small businesses across Aotearoa. Chooice innovated a socially distanced online market space that allowed small grass roots businesses (many dealing with cash only transactions) to elevate to an online platform during shifting COVID levels and regulations regarding essential items.

Sarah mostly talked about her business. Diverted a little away from her theme “**Supporting small businesses to survive and thrive**”. This is an area we as a council could be, and should be, very actively involved in. Her presentation was very passionate and very well presented.

**Nga patai/Questions:** For many, Chooice provided the only means for whanau to access home grown bulk solutions to sanitiser and masks when they weren't readily available in local supermarkets. Chooice also enabled a social space to celebrate our unique identity and ingenuity here in Aotearoa – uplifting the spirits of its members( 500,000+) and making the choice to support small, support local – personal. **How do we continue to support and grow socially connected online opportunities in the future?**

**Key kupu:** Innovation, Digital Self-determination, Response, Stability

#### **8. Taste of Gore – Jim Geddes**

Jim is currently the Head of the Arts and Heritage Department of Gore District Council. He headed the development of the Hokonui Heritage Centre in Gore and was instrumental in establishing the Eastern Southland Gallery, which in 2003 underwent a major redevelopment, with a new wing added to house the John Money and Ralph Hotere Collections. Currently he is working on the planning of a major expansion to Gore's *Arts & Heritage Precinct*, and (thanks to a generous gift from Auckland's Muka Studios), the establishment of a professional lithographic studio and artist-in-residence facilities in an historic former church.

Very interesting, a lovely insight into Gore and the surrounding Hokonui district, the maunga, awa and whenua. Demonstrated what a relatively small local authority can achieve in the arts. Could do with a bit of his energy in the Far North, and a coordinated multi-platform approach.

#### **Summary**

An enjoyable informative and relevant conference interspersed with the LGNZ announcement made for a politically interesting few day. Was useful meeting and talking to other community board members. Many shared the frustrations' we have and which we are addressing through our combined community board working party.

Some concern with the current Government's intention on local government reform. Three waters, fluoridation, changes to the RMA, roading reforms, Māori wards controversy, and the abolition of DHBs are all examples of government's lack of confidence in, and commitment to, local democracy.

Grew a renewed appreciation for our own council, and empathy for the struggles that others have that we don't. Learned a lot about how other community boards run their meetings, grant funding applications, set up their agendas and manage their external communications and social media accounts. For example, Bay of Islands – Whangaroa ward, community board members do not have admin access to our own Facebook page. When we have asked for access (so we can post panui, updates, photos and news of our achievements etc) council staff tell us that they are the only ones who can update/manage our community board face book page. It was interesting then to find that different community boards around Aotearoa manage their own social media pages themselves- with one elected member taking on the responsibility of posting updates to Facebook etc with all other members then sharing that update onto their individual community/subdivision pages. Simple, direct, consistent, and clear messaging – determined by the board, not staff.

At all levels, this conference was about partnership – the impact of its presence and absence. We heard every speaker talk about partnership, particularly with Māori. When I spoke with other elected members from around Aotearoa, they shared their own council's struggles and successes when they engaged or did not engage with Māori. There was an overwhelming acceptance that we cannot do what we have always done. The time for change has come. Local government is a pakeha dominant space entrenched in pakeha norms, behaviours, and aspirations. We left with a renewed hope that pakeha will continue to embrace Māori participation and partnership on whanau, hapū and iwi's terms – unhindered by Pakeha projections (however well-meaning or intentioned). Our Treaty partners may need to practice stepping back from their world view to allow space for Māori norms, behaviours and aspirations within local government. An important opportunity to build awareness, tolerance, and practice of peace.

Accommodation was lovely and warm, but very far from the venue, and this could have been logistical nightmare, but our hosts were very accommodating. The kai was great, the local Taste of Gore event was exceptional, who knew they knew how to cook paua perfectly.

All in all, a useful, informative 3 days in lovely Gore.

## **7 INFORMATION REPORTS**

### **7.1 COUNCIL ACTION SHEET UPDATE JULY 2021**

**File Number:** A3246243

**Author:** Casey Gannon, Meetings Administrator

**Authoriser:** William J Taylor MBE, General Manager - Corporate Services

#### **TAKE PŪRONGO / PURPOSE OF THE REPORT**

To provide Council with an overview of outstanding Council decisions from 1 January 2020.

#### **WHAKARĀPOOTO MATUA / EXECUTIVE SUMMARY**

- Council staff have reintroduced action sheets as a mechanism to communicate progress against Council decisions and confirm when decisions have been implemented.
- The focus of this paper is on Council decisions.
- Action sheets are also in place for Committees and Community Boards.

#### **TŪTOHUNGA / RECOMMENDATION**

**That Council receive the report Action Sheet Update July 2021.**

#### **1) TĀHUHU KŌRERO / BACKGROUND**

The Democracy Services Team have been working on a solution to ensure that elected members can receive regular updates on progress against decisions made at meetings, in alignment with a Chief Executive Officer key performance indicator.

Action sheets have been designed as a way to close the loop and communicate with elected members on the decisions made by way of resolution at formal meetings.

Action sheets are not intended to be public information but will provide updates to elected members, who, when appropriate can report back to their communities and constituents.

#### **2) MATAPAKI ME NGĀ KŌWHIRINGA / DISCUSSION AND OPTIONS**

The outstanding tasks are multi-facet projects that take longer to fully complete.

The Democracy Services staff are working with staff to ensure that the project completion times are updated so that action sheets provided to members differentiate between work outstanding and work in progress.


#### **Take Tūtohunga / Reason for the recommendation**

To provide Council with an overview of outstanding Council decisions from 1 January 2020.

#### **3) PĀNGA PŪTEA ME NGĀ WĀHANGA TAHUA / FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS AND BUDGETARY PROVISION**

There are no financial implications or need for budgetary provision in receiving this report.

#### **ĀPITI HANGA / ATTACHMENTS**

1. Outstanding Actions 2020-01-01 - 2021-06-24 - A3260170  





| OUTSTANDING ACTIONS REPORT                  |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|
| Division:<br>Committee: Council<br>Officer: |  | Printed: Thursday, 24 June 2021 2:53:32 pm<br>Date From: 1/01/2020<br>Date To: 24/06/2021  |  |
| Meeting                                     | Title  | Resolution   | Notes  |
| Council<br>9/04/2020                        | Request for funding of development of a supplementary water source for Kaikohe | <p><b>MOTION</b></p> <p>Moved: Mayor John Carter<br/>                     Seconded: Cr Kelly Stratford</p> <p>That the Council:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) agrees to a budget of \$2,000,000 for a supplementary water supply for Kaikohe in the final Annual Plan for 2020/2021.</li> <li>b) approves the Chief Executive engaging Williamson Water and Land Advisory to provide detailed engineering design and cost estimates to connect the reservoir to the treatment plant in the Wairoro Stream.</li> </ul> <p><b>AMENDMENT</b></p> <p>Moved: Cr John Vujcich<br/>                     Seconded: Cr Felicity Foy</p> <p>Directs that the 2017 resolution of Council be initiated to investigate and address drought resilience in Kaikohe, and that hapu, community board and communities be involved in the process.</p> <p><u>In Favour:</u> Mayor John Carter, Deputy Mayor Ann Court, Crs David Clendon, Dave Collard, Felicity Foy, Mate Radich, Rachel Smith, Kelly Stratford, Moko Tepania and John Vujcich</p> <p><u>Against:</u> Cr Rachel Smith</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><b>CARRIED</b></p> <p>The amendment became the substantive motion.</p> <p><b>RESOLUTION 2020/15</b></p> <p>Moved: Mayor John Carter<br/>                     Seconded: Cr Kelly Stratford</p> <p>That the Council:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) agrees to a budget of \$2,000,000 for a supplementary water supply for Kaikohe in the final Annual Plan for 2020/2021.</li> </ul> | <p><b>Target Date Revision</b></p> <p>Target date changed by Huriwai, Aisha from 23 April 2020 to 30 October 2021 - Council though - Long Term Plan deliberations added additional funds to support the MN10 project with Te Tai Tokerau Trust to build better water resilience for Kaikohe.</p> |

| OUTSTANDING ACTIONS REPORT                  |  |   |  |
|---|--|---|--|
| Division:<br>Committee: Council<br>Officer: |  | Printed: Thursday, 24 June 2021 2:53:32 pm<br>Date From: 1/01/2020<br>Date To: 24/06/2021   |  |
| Meeting                                     | Title  | Resolution  | Notes  |
|   |  | b) approves the Chief Executive engaging Williamson Water and Land Advisory to provide detailed engineering design and cost estimates to connect the reservoir to the treatment plant in the Wairoro Stream.<br><br>c) directs that the 10 August 2017 resolution of Council be initiated to investigate and address drought resilience in Kaikohe, and that hapu, community board and communities be involved in the process.<br><br><u>In Favour:</u> Mayor John Carter, Deputy Mayor Ann Court, Crs David Clendon, Dave Collard, Felicity Foy, Mate Radich, Rachel Smith, Kelly Stratford, Moko Tepania and John Vujcich<br><br><u>Against:</u> Nil<br><br><p style="text-align: right;"><b>CARRIED</b></p>  |  |
| Council<br>7/05/2020                        | Panguru Flood Mitigation Road Rising - Additional Budget Request | <b>RESOLUTION</b><br>Moved: Cr Felicity Foy<br>Seconded: Cr Dave Collard<br><br><b>That Council revoke the following Council 3 October 2019 decision;</b><br><b>That:</b><br>a) Council approves the contract to the value of \$995,000.00 be awarded to Fulton Hogan Limited through the current FNDC Road Maintenance and Renewals Contracts for the Panguru flood mitigation works – Road Raising, West Coast Road.<br>b) authority be delegated to the Chief Executive Officer to award a contract for the Panguru flood mitigation works – Road Raising, West Coast Road, within the approved budget of \$995,000.00, including contingency;<br>and that:<br>a) Council approves the revised contract to the value of \$1,199,000.00 be awarded to Fulton Hogan Limited through the current FNDC Road Maintenance and Renewals Contracts for the Panguru flood mitigation works – Road Raising, West Coast Road. | <b>Target Date Revision</b><br>Target date changed by Huriwai, Aisha from 21 May 2020 to 01 July 2021 - Contract has been awarded and work is in progress. |

| OUTSTANDING ACTIONS REPORT          |   |  |  |
|-------------------------------------|---|--|--|
| Division:<br>Committee:<br>Officer: |   | Printed: Thursday, 24 June 2021 2:53:32 pm<br>Date From: 1/01/2020<br>Date To: 24/06/2021  |  |
| Council                             |   |  |  |
| Meeting                             | Title   | Resolution   | Notes  |
|                                     |   | <p>b) authority be delegated to the Chief Executive Officer to award a contract for the Panguru flood mitigation works – Road Raising, West Coast Road, within the approved budget of \$1,199,000.00, including contingency.</p> <p><u>In Favour:</u> His Worship the Mayor John Carter, Deputy Mayor Ann Court, Crs David Clendon, Dave Collard, Felicity Foy, Mate Radich, Rachel Smith, Kelly Stratford, Moko Tepania and John Vujcich</p> <p><u>Against:</u> Nil</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><b>CARRIED</b></p>  |  |
| Council<br>21/05/2020               | Request for Financial Assistance for Kawakawa Community Owned Under Veranda Lighting Scheme | <p><b>MOTION</b></p> <p>Moved: Cr Kelly Stratford<br/>Seconded: Mayor John Carter</p> <p>That Council approve a financial contribution of \$6,720 (GST exclusive) to the Kawakawa Business and Community Association (KBCA), for the cost of electricity supply to the Kawakawa Community Lighting Scheme, to be funded from the Eastern Amenity Development Levy Fund.</p> <p><b>AMENDMENT</b></p> <p>Moved: Cr John Vujcich<br/>Seconded: Cr Moko Tepania</p> <p>That Council:</p> <p>a) approve financial contributions of \$6,720 (GST exclusive) each to the Kawakawa Business and Community Association (KBCA) and no more than \$6,500 for the Kaikohe Business Association for expenses related to the Central Business District lighting schemes in those towns, to be funded from the Eastern and Western Amenity Development Levy Funds respectively.</p> <p>b) agree to consultation for a targeted rate be added to the Long Term Plan for future funding of these schemes.</p> | <p><b>14 May 2021 5:00pm Huriwai, Aisha</b></p> <p>Funding has been paid to the 2 township associations for the running of the lighting schemes.</p> |

| OUTSTANDING ACTIONS REPORT                  |   |  |   |
|---|---|--|---|
| Division:<br>Committee: Council<br>Officer: |   | Printed: Thursday, 24 June 2021 2:53:32 pm<br>Date From: 1/01/2020<br>Date To: 24/06/2021  |   |
| Meeting                                     | Title   | Resolution   | Notes   |
|   |   | <p><u>In Favour:</u> Mayor John Carter, Deputy Mayor Ann Court, Crs Dave Collard, Felicity Foy, Mate Radich, Rachel Smith, Kelly Stratford, Moko Tepania and John Vujcich</p> <p><u>Against:</u> Cr David Clendon</p> <p>The amendment became the substantive motion.</p> <p><b>RESOLUTION 2020/25</b></p> <p>Moved: Cr Kelly Stratford<br/>Seconded: Mayor John Carter</p> <p><b>That Council:</b></p> <p>a) approve financial contributions of \$6,720 (GST exclusive) each to the Kawakawa Business and Community Association (KBCA) and no more than \$6,500 for the Kaikohe Business Association for expenses related to the Central Business District lighting schemes in those towns, to be funded from the Eastern and Western Amenity Development Levy Funds respectively.</p> <p>b) agree to consultation for a targeted rate be added to the Long Term Plan for future funding of these schemes.</p> <p><u>In Favour:</u> Mayor John Carter, Deputy Mayor Ann Court, Crs David Clendon, Dave Collard, Felicity Foy, Mate Radich, Rachel Smith, Kelly Stratford, Moko Tepania and John Vujcich</p> <p><u>Against:</u> Nil</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><b>CARRIED</b></p> |   |
| Council<br>21/05/2020                       | Options for controlling and regulating trade in public places | <p><b>MOTION</b></p> <p>Moved: Mayor John Carter<br/>Seconded: Cr Felicity Foy</p> <p>That Council, under the Local Government Act, adopt Option Three – make a new bylaw, as the most appropriate response to addressing the perceived problems associated with trading in public places.</p>   | <p><b>29 Apr 2021 11:38am Thomas, Caitlin</b></p> <p>now being considered as part of a new road use bylaw - report to Strategy and Policy Committee agenda 4th May 2021</p> |

| OUTSTANDING ACTIONS REPORT                  |       |   |       |
|---|-------|---|-------|
| Division:<br>Committee: Council<br>Officer: |       | Printed: Thursday, 24 June 2021 2:53:32 pm<br>Date From: 1/01/2020<br>Date To: 24/06/2021   |       |
| Meeting                                     | Title | Resolution  | Notes |
|   |       | <p><b>AMENDMENT</b></p> <p>Moved: Cr Kelly Stratford<br/>                     Seconded: Cr Dave Collard</p> <p>That Council b) develop guidelines and education programmes after the adoption of the bylaw.</p> <p><u>In Favour:</u> Mayor John Carter, Deputy Mayor Ann Court, Crs David Clendon, Dave Collard, Felicity Foy, Mate Radich, Rachel Smith, Kelly Stratford, Moko Tepania and John Vujcich</p> <p><u>Against:</u> Nil</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><b>CARRIED</b></p> <p>The amendment became the substantive motion.</p> <p><b>RESOLUTION 2020/29</b></p> <p>Moved: Mayor John Carter<br/>                     Seconded: Cr Felicity Foy</p> <p><b>That Council, under the Local Government Act,</b></p> <p>a) <b>adopt Option Three – make a new bylaw, as the most appropriate response to addressing the perceived problems associated with trading in public places.</b></p> <p>b) <b>develop guidelines and education programmes after the adoption of the bylaw.</b></p> <p><u>In Favour:</u> Mayor John Carter, Deputy Mayor Ann Court, Crs David Clendon, Dave Collard, Felicity Foy, Mate Radich, Rachel Smith, Kelly Stratford, Moko Tepania and John Vujcich</p> <p><u>Against:</u> Nil</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><b>CARRIED</b></p> |       |





| OUTSTANDING ACTIONS REPORT                  |                             |  |   |
|---|-----------------------------|--|---|
| Division:<br>Committee: Council<br>Officer: |                             | Printed: Thursday, 24 June 2021 2:53:32 pm<br>Date From: 1/01/2020<br>Date To: 24/06/2021  |   |
| Meeting                                     | Title                       | Resolution   | Notes   |
|   |                             | b) the Total Value of the contracts over the term of the agreements is \$1,359,309.<br>c) Council delegate the execution of the contracts and approval and execution of any variations to the contracts to Far North District Council's Chief Executive Officer.<br><br><b>CARRIED</b>   |   |
| Council<br>8/04/2021                        | Solid Waste<br>Bylaw Review | <b>RESOLUTION 2021/23</b><br>Moved: Deputy Mayor Ann Court<br>Seconded: Cr Dave Collard<br><b>That Council:</b><br>a) agree, under section 155(1) of the Local Government Act 2002, the Solid Waste Bylaw 2016 is the most appropriate way of addressing solid waste problems in the Far North District.<br>b) agree, under section 155(2) of the Local Government Act 2002, the Solid Waste bylaw 2016:<br>i) is the most appropriate form of bylaw.<br>ii) does not give rise to any implications under the New Zealand Bill of Rights Act 1990.<br>c) agree the provisions of the Solid Waste Bylaw be reassessed in conjunction with the Waste Management and Minimisation Plan review, which is due by 2023, or after central government legislation comes into effect.<br><br><b>CARRIED</b><br><br><b>Note:</b> request the Chief Executive Officer take this topic - Roadside Recycling (bag options), to the Regional Waste workstream for discussion within the Regional Waste Strategies policy.<br><br><b>Note:</b> request the Chief Executive Officer provide timeframes for the establishment of a governance group on Regional Waste Strategies. | <b>29 Apr 2021 10:35am Macken, Briar</b><br>Next steps: Work regarding consultation requirements underway. Proposal due to SPP Committee meeting July 20.<br><b>17 Jun 2021 10:36am Gannon, Casey</b><br>Briar advised that part of the resolution will not be complete until 2023 - work is actively being done to go through a robust process.<br><b>17 Jun 2021 10:37am Gannon, Casey - Target Date Revision</b><br>Target date changed by Gannon, Casey from 22 April 2021 to 02 January 2023 - As Briar advised this will not be complete until 2023 - with work underway in 2020-2021, next report due to SPP Committee July 2021 |

| OUTSTANDING ACTIONS REPORT                  |   |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|
| Division:<br>Committee: Council<br>Officer: |   | Printed: Thursday, 24 June 2021 2:53:32 pm<br>Date From: 1/01/2020<br>Date To: 24/06/2021  |  |
| Meeting                                     | Title   | Resolution   | Notes  |
| Council<br>8/04/2021                        | Hihi<br>Wastewater<br>Treatment<br>Plant Capital<br>Works<br>Business<br>Case | <p><b>MOTION</b></p> <p>Moved: Cr Felicity Foy<br/>                     Seconded: Cr Dave Collard</p> <p>That Council:</p> <p>a) approves the detailed business case preferred Option 3 – Membrane Bio Reactor, to be located on the existing Hihi Wastewater Treatment Plant site to be advanced to-community consultation and Iwi consultation.</p> <p>b) notes the potential cost of the preferred option and the impact upon rates.</p> <p>The meeting was adjourned from 11.24 am to 11.42 am.</p> <p><b>AMENDMENT</b></p> <p>Moved: Cr Felicity Foy<br/>                     Seconded: Cr Dave Collard</p> <p>That Council:</p> <p>a) acknowledge the current risk being carried at Hihi Wastewater Treatment Plant.</p> <p>b) direct staff to consult with Iwi and the Hihi community on most sustainable and affordable future focused solution (with consultation to begin by May).</p> <p>c) direct staff to evaluate short term mitigation while the long-term solution is being developed.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><b>CARRIED</b></p> <p><u>Against:</u> Cr Rachel Smith</p> <p><b>RESOLUTION 2021/24</b></p> <p>Moved: Cr Felicity Foy<br/>                     Seconded: Cr Dave Collard</p> <p><b>That Council:</b></p> | <p><b>19 Apr 2021 10:11am Moore, Mary</b></p> <p>a) No action required, b) Initial meeting with Engagement Lead scheduled for 28.04.2021 to agree approach - expected completion date TBC, c) Inspection of tank already in train - delays experienced due to wet weather as tank needs to be emptied first, a process that will take 2 days - expected completion date 31 May 2021</p> <p><b>24 May 2021 11:28am Moore, Mary</b></p> <p>b) Project team formed and engagement plan in development. Contact made with Iwi and community contacts. Informal attendance at ratepayer assn meeting. Possible formal engagement opportunity beginning July</p> <p><b>24 May 2021 11:32am Moore, Mary</b></p> <p>c) Condition assessment commissioned but dependent on weather. Previously considered options to be referenced. AM investigating other options. Inf Planning input re RC.</p> |

| OUTSTANDING ACTIONS REPORT |  |  |   |
|----------------------------|--|--|---|
|                            |  | Division:<br>Committee: Council<br>Officer:  | Printed: Thursday, 24 June 2021 2:53:32 pm<br>Date From: 1/01/2020<br>Date To: 24/06/2021   |
| Meeting                    | Title  | Resolution   | Notes   |
|                            |  | a) acknowledge the current risk being carried at Hihi Wastewater Treatment Plant.<br>b) direct staff to consult with Iwi and the Hihi community on most sustainable and affordable future focused solution (with consultation to begin by May).<br>c) direct staff to evaluate short term mitigation while the long-term solution is being developed.<br><p style="text-align: right;"><b>CARRIED</b></p> <p><u>Against:</u> Cr Rachel Smith</p>   |   |
| Council<br>21/12/2020      | Kerikeri CBD Ring Road Acquisition of Strategic Property | <p><b>RESOLUTION 2020/106</b></p> <p>Moved: Mayor John Carter<br/>Seconded: Cr Rachel Smith</p> <p><b>That Council:</b></p> a) confirm its intent to complete the Kerikeri ring road development as identified in the Integrated Transport Strategy;<br>b) authorise the CEO to negotiate and purchase the property at 13 Homestead Road, Kerikeri, as a strategic asset.<br>c) resolve to continue acquiring properties for the future transportation needs of Kerikeri on a case by case basis and as they became available for the western route.<br>d) receive an options report to the Infrastructure Committee in March 2021, outlining the next steps of the Strategic Western Route, including LTP considerations, to progress the project.<br><p><u>In Favour:</u> Mayor John Carter, Deputy Mayor Ann Court, David Clendon, Dave Collard, Felicity Foy, Rachel Smith, Kelly Stratford, Moko Tepania and John Vujcich<br/> <u>Against:</u> Nil<br/> <u>Abstained:</u> Cr Mate Radich</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><b>CARRIED</b></p> | <p><b>16 Jun 2021 8:52am Finch, Andy</b><br/>                     A scoping paper for a future report to IC/Council has been agreed with Cllrs Court, Smith, Clendon and Foy. This paper is now being developed with a target date of the last quarter of 2021 calendar year.</p> <p><b>17 Jun 2021 10:34am Gannon, Casey - Target Date Revision</b><br/>                     Target date changed by Gannon, Casey from 04 January 2021 to 01 October 2021 - Per Andy report expected to go to Council at last quarter of 2021.</p> |

**7.2 ROAD CONTROLLING AUTHORITIES FORUM - DEPUTY MAYOR ANN COURT****File Number:** A3250439**Author:** Casey Gannon, Meetings Administrator**Authoriser:** Aisha Huriwai, Team Leader Democracy Services**TAKE PŪRONGO / PURPOSE OF THE REPORT**

For Council to receive the Road Controlling Authorities Forum report which Deputy Mayor Ann Court attended. The theme for June's forum was: Working Together to Meet Our Future Funding Challenge.

**WHAKARĀPOOTO MATUA / EXECUTIVE SUMMARY**

The Road Controlling Authorities Forum (RCAF) is a closed, non-political Incorporated Society of road asset managers and roading professionals from all Territorial Authorities (except the Chatham Islands), Department of Conservation and Waka Kotahi the New Zealand Transport Agency.

The RCAF vision is to assist road-controlling authorities to make informed decisions, The purpose of the RCAF is to exchange information and provide updates on sector working group activities, proposed legislation, new standards and guidelines, highway and procurement strategies and other issues relevant to road controlling authorities and other member organisations.

**TŪTOHUNGA / RECOMMENDATION**

**That the Council receive the report Road Controlling Authorities Forum - Deputy Mayor Ann Court.**

**TĀHUHU KŌRERO / BACKGROUND****The forum kicked off with a Safety Note:**

Waka Kotahi Relationships Manager Auckland/Northland spoke about his experience of being called to a work-place serious harm injury. He asked the audience "as roading managers, are you talking with your contractors and the people at the coal face to understand how the job actually happens? Often these meetings inspire better outcomes as you may learn what the challenges are that lead to mistakes happening, often your staff can tell you how to do things better, faster, safer. Talk to your teams, be visible and understand the risks your workers are facing."

**Keynote Speaker: Hon Michael Wood, Minister of Transport**

- Minister Wood cancelled at late notice. His presentation was advertised as addressing:
  - GPS 2021 Working together to meet the implementation challenges
  - Funding
  - Road to Zero
  - Emissions reduction
- A six-minute video was played in lieu and a panel of three speakers stood up to talk about the how we as a sector could help with meeting the Ministers goals of a carbon neutral network and the challenges of maintaining the network in the face of significant funding constraints. I was privileged to be one of the panel members.
- Take out messages from the Ministers video:
  - Everyone no matter their age or ability should be able to move around our network safely

- The scale and pace of delivery is proving exceptionally challenging
- Speed Management Plans will be required to be introduced which will link infrastructure, planning, speed management and speed camera placement
- Transport needs to become mode neutral
- Waka Kotahi have 11 activity classes. Projects can be funded across classes so do not limit your business case to one criteria
- The NZ UP-Grade Programme has to be rebalanced and refocused to address the Governments objectives in meeting their climate change goals and housing objectives whilst at the same time managing debt in a responsible manner.

Note: Elected members will be aware that this rebalance and refocus removed the four laning between Auckland and Northland.

**Chief Financial Officer, Waka Kotahi: Howard Cattermole**

- Mr Cattermole presented on the affordability challenges for the NLTP:
  - National Land Transport Fund (NLTF) revenue is sourced from FED (Fuel Excise Duties), Road User Charges (RUC), Motor Vehicle Registrations, Tolling and Other (Predominantly Ground Leases)
  - No increases to FED and RUC have been proposed for this NLTP (National Land Transport Programme) period
  - There is a sum total of \$500m available over three years to be allocated at the Waka Kotahi boards discretion to fund above the lower levels of the activity classes
  - There is a sum total of 10% available for new projects
  - Budgets for road maintenance cannot be supported
  - The GPS sets the upper and low funding ranges for each activity class.
    - This is challenged by a high level of existing commitments
    - No cash surplus to carry forward
    - Asset base growing in scale and complexity
    - Revenue impact of the new clean car scheme
    - Cost inflation
    - The addition of rail and coastal shipping as fundable activities
  - The activity class ranges for the coming NLTP can only be supported at the lower end of the activity bucket due to significant funding constraints.
- The future outlook is uncertain.
- Moving forward it is expected heavy rail will be fully transitioned into the NLTP.
- More investment is required than we have funding for in the NLTP, so the Crown has chosen to use appropriations to boost the fund.
- Two of the Governments priorities which needed to be funded are Let's Get Wellington Moving (LGWM) and the Auckland Transport Alignment Project (ATAP)
- The board of Waka Kotahi are not happy with some of the decisions they have had to make. Quote of the day "Making the lease worst decision."

**Road Efficient Group: Update on the One Network Framework:**

- The One Network Framework (ONF) provides better integration of transport and land use planning taking into account movement and place functions.



- It will support how our transport systems deliver enduring outcomes and community wellbeing, the development of multi modal networks and how we make investment decisions.
- It will inform investment decisions moving forward
- AMPs are a means to end, which is to enable communities to live their best lives.

**Digital Engineering: David Darwin: Lead Advisor Investment Planning**

- Opportunities for digitisation of transport activity management and clarifying the roles of Business Intelligence Modelling (BIM). Cr Vujcich would have loved this one.

**Kiwi Rail: Chief Operating Officer: Todd Moyle**

- Ten Year Vision / Opportunities / Investing in our Future
- JAS (Japanese Agricultural Standard) is a tool used to measure the cubic meter of logs. Globally a JAS is at record prices. They cannot be harvested and shipped fast enough.
- Two new interislander ferries are to be procured. They will be hybrid so will be fully electric through the sounds with charging facilities to be installed at Picton. The new vessels will be physically much larger so a significant spend will be required to upgrade facilities at Wellington and Picton. Did you know that crew live on live off? (7 days on 7 days off)
- Five prisoners from Ngawha have been taken through the rail induction process and have recently graduated. They will be offered employment opportunities with Kiwi Rail upon release. Kiwi Rail spoke fondly of this experience and their aspirations for this opportunity to become BAU.
- The Kiwi Rail Investment Program (RNIP) is under development and due for release shortly

**New Speed Setting Rule Change**

- Waka Kotahi and the Ministry of Transport are currently consulting on a draft Setting of Speed Limits Rule that will give effect to a new regulatory framework for speed management and transitioning to safer speed limits around schools.
- We received an almost identical presentation the following week at the Regional Land Transport Committee Meeting.
- There is a significant amount of work required to be done at both the Council level and at the Regional Land Transport Committee level to achieve the very ambitious timeline (2024)
- We will be requesting a presentation to the community boards (Andy Finch will take the lead)

**Road Works Site Health and Safety Programme**

We had a very sobering presentation on the worksite health and safety challenges experienced by our contractors on a daily basis. There have in recent years sadly been deaths and serious injuries attributable to bad driver behaviour at work sites.

Peter Silcock, CEO Civil Contractors New Zealand Inc spoke on the work being undertaken to update the Worksafe Good Practice Guide, COPPTM Review, TTM Training and Competency.

**MATAPAKI ME NGĀ KŌWHIRINGA / DISCUSSION AND NEXT STEPS**

The implications of the changes to the NZ Up-Grade Program have significant consequences for Northland. The Regional Land Transport Committee will be considering the impact of this announcement at their August meeting.

The implications of the funding challenges are not unique to the Far North but given the impending funding constraints for maintenance, operations and renewals, coupled with our current network condition, we need to have visibility of the consequence of under investing in our network. In due course a report from the NTA will be received.

**Indicative investment level for the 2021-24 NLTP**

The Waka Kotahi Board has endorsed indicative investment for continuous programmes as shown in the table below, with a comparison of the recent bid you put forward and the funding allocated to you at the start of the 2018-21 NLTP.

| Activity class          | 2021-24 programme bid - requested total (Gross \$) | 2021-24 programme with indicative funding approval (Gross \$) | 2018-21 forecast allocation in August 2018 (Gross \$) |
|-------------------------|--|---|---|
| Local roads maintenance | \$105,670,000                                      | \$88,428,000  | \$73,221,000  |
| Road safety promotion   | \$5,679,000  | \$5,364,000   | \$3,415,000   |

The final investment decision for the ranked capital projects of regional significance alongside our own low-cost low risk (LCLR) projects will not be released until late August early September.

There is some risk with this timing due to its impact on staff being able to finalize the work programme, including completing design, procurement and contract award in time for 2021/22 construction season.

All presentations are available to view on the RCA website: <http://rcaforum.org.nz/>

## **PĀNGA PŪTEA ME NGĀ WĀHANGA TAHUA / FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS AND BUDGETARY PROVISION**

The implications of the changes to the NZ Up-Grade Program have significant consequences for Northland. The Regional Land Transport Committee will be considering the impact of this announcement at their August meeting.

The final investment decision for the ranked capital projects of regional significance alongside our own low-cost low risk (LCLR) projects will not be released until late August early September.

There is some risk with this timing due to its impact on staff being able to finalize the work programme, including completing design, procurement and contract award in time for 2021/22 construction season.

There are no financial implications or requirements for budgetary provision in receiving this report. The cost to ratepayers in sending Deputy Mayor Court to this forum was \$1,072 inclusive of GST.

## **ĀPITI HANGA / ATTACHMENTS**

**Nil**

**7.3 CEO REPORT TO COUNCIL 01 MARCH 2021 - 30 APRIL 2021****File Number:** A3207496**Author:** Mia Haywood, Accounting Support Officer**Authoriser:** Emma Healy, Executive Officer**PURPOSE OF THE REPORT**

The purpose of the report is to present the CEO Report, 1 March 2021 to 30 April 2021 for Council's consideration.

**EXECUTIVE SUMMARY**

The CEO Report to Council is a summary of Council activities, presenting an overview across all activities that Council undertakes. We have placed emphasis on relevant issues and pressures Council is experiencing whilst meeting its objectives to the community.

**RECOMMENDATION**

**That the Council receive the report CEO Report to Council 01 March 2021 - 30 April 2021.**

**BACKGROUND**

The CEO Report to Council is attached and covers a detailed overview of progress against Council's activities. His Worship the Mayor and Councillors' feedback is welcomed.

**DISCUSSION AND NEXT STEPS**

This report is for information only.

**FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS AND BUDGETARY PROVISION**

There are no financial implications or budgetary provision needed as a result of this report.

**ATTACHMENTS**

1. CEO Report to Council 1 March - 30 April 2021 - A3249042 [↓](#) 



## **Chief Executive Officer's Report to Council**

Period: 1 March 2021 – 30 April 2021

### **Key Work Plan Areas:**

**Governance**

**CEO Office**

**Strategy**

**Corporate**

**Operations**

**Infrastructure and Asset Management**

### **Introduction**

Welcome to this CEO report, which provides an overview on the Council's activities for the period 1 March 2021 – 30 April 2021.

## Welcome to the latest summary report of Council activities

### Introduction from Shaun Clarke, Chief Executive

This reporting period showed our mission of Creating Great Places and Supporting Our People coming to life through the significant engagement exercises we ran. March saw staff and Elected Members lead the Navigating Our Course consultation. We hosted 22 events in 18 communities during March seeking feedback on the Long Term Plan, Far North 2100, draft District Plan and Representation Review. A key issue for our residents was rates and the rates review. Not only were we out on the road listening to communities, about 80 of the 770 people and organisations who made submissions to our Long Term Plan 2021-31 spoke at hearings in Kaikohe and Kaitiāia. There was a lot of time, effort and energy put into listening to our communities and I'd like to thank staff and Elected Members for their efforts.

In addition, about 9000 property owners in the Far North received letters from the Council about Significant Natural Areas (SNAs) on their land. Council now have a statutory obligation to identify unique landscapes, species and habitats and manage them in a new District Plan. Northland Councils collaborated on a project last year to map SNAs in the region. The new maps have identified that 42% of our district contains potentially sensitive environments, an increase from about 30% in the 1990s. Consultation is ongoing through to June on this topic.

The Regional Land Transport Committee also sought community feedback on a Draft Regional Land Transport Plan 2021-2027 and a Draft Regional Public Transport Plan 2021-2031. Consultation on the plans which address a range of critical regional issues, including connectivity, route resilience and economic and tourism development concluded the end of March.

We received our 2021 CouncilMARK™ assessment report which showed how far we have come as a Council. Local Government New Zealand assessors spent two hours with Elected Members and the Strategic Leadership Team outlining key findings from their assessment last year. The assessors commented we had come a long way since we were first assessed in 2017, despite having unique challenges as a local authority. They also said we should be proud of the report which evaluates our governance, service delivery, financial management and community engagement.

Some of the feedback we received in this report is that we have made huge strides internally in getting good systems, processes and foundations laid but our stakeholders have yet to see the impacts of that. The Strategic Leadership Team (SLT) spent a day together to consider how we might address that by being more 'up and out' focused. We engaged with all People Leaders firstly to share with them our initial thinking, which they further developed and have jointly workshopped. The results of this work will come to SLT in June.

The SLT have kept engagement with staff up through a series of Your Voice sessions. These were an open forum for all staff to participate in to share their thoughts on the Your Voice survey results and areas to focus action planning on. Almost 250 staff attended these sessions; over 70% of staff who chose to attend a session to discuss what it is like to work at FNDC. Teams are now putting their action plans together, with SLT developing theirs in May. We had the privilege of acknowledging nine staff through the Love Your Work awards, all recognized for going above and beyond and living our Values. I'd like to acknowledge the kind words of Deputy Mayor Ann Court to staff at the awards session. We also held a morning tea for all new starters, forty-one of which were invited. We recognise in a digital working environment it's critical to maintain face-to-face contact and this was a chance for new staff and SLT to have an informal chat over coffee and cake.

Local government reforms in resource management and three waters, along with the housing crisis

we are facing, remain big ticket items. The Department of Internal Affairs (DIA) ran a briefing workshop at the end of March on three waters for Zone 1. Local Government NZ (LGNZ) is engaging closely with the sector and central government, and the Northland Councils jointly discuss through the Northland Forward together programme. DIA also had their Housing & Resource management specialist run a briefing for staff on Resource Management reforms which was well attended. While there is still much uncertainty, we are doing what we can to be informed and prepared for what reforms may bring.

COVID has dominated international headlines for over twelve months now, however it was a potential tsunami in early March which caused concern for the Far North. On 5 March a tsunami warning was issued by National Civil Defence following a M8.0 earthquake near the Kermadec Islands. All east coast areas from Whangarei to the Bay of Islands were asked to evacuate immediately to higher ground. This was then extended to all coastal areas of Northland. The threat did not eventuate into a significant tsunami but following the incident and our response a debrief allowed for some 'lessons learned'.

Other achievements during this period included –

- The first stage in the \$7 million Te Hiku Revitalisation project got underway with spectacular artwork and landscaping along Dalmatian Alley in Kaitiāia almost complete.
- Following several years of opposition, the Environment Court confirmed an agreement that takes the sensitive issue of wastewater discharges into Doubtless Bay out of the Environment Court system and provides a framework for us to work together on a solution. The agreement establishes a working group of Council, hapū, and community members tasked with exploring alternative options, including land-based wastewater disposal. This agreement is a step-change in the way we work with communities and hapū and we hope to continue this relationship well beyond our search for a disposal solution.
- We received the first substantial autumn rain which meant flows in the Awanui River rose above the minimum consent level set by Northland Regional Council. The final water restrictions in Kaitiāia were lifted.
- A five-year lease agreement between the Council and the group was signed which sees Te Puna O Kūpenuku pay a peppercorn rent of \$1 per annum to lease the Rawene campus, with a five-year right of renewal.
- Good progress in completing the roading capital works programme for 2020/21, with most works awarded and expenditure tracking at or near forecast.
- The completion of our 30-year Infrastructure Strategy.

Operational performance during this period saw –

- 138.50% increase in financial interactions at Service Centres
- 52.43% increase in calls to the Contact Centre
- 21.67% decrease in AskUs emails received
- 151.35% increase in building inspections booked
- 100.99% increase in visits to Service Centres
- 50% increase in i-SITE visitor numbers
- 173% increase in i-SITE retail revenue
- 35% increase in i-SITE transaction spend
- 62% increase in i-SITE transaction numbers
- 5.4% increase in digital library use, reflecting ongoing customer uptake of the increased range of digital content



- 0.5% increase in book checkouts, reflecting an active school holiday period, and the busiest month of March since 2018
- 700 Animal Management RFS received with an average of 97.5% for urgent RFS and 95% non-urgent
- For the 2020/2021 registration period, there are now 8,707 dogs registered
- 76 dogs were impounded across the District with 12 dogs rehomed through the Council's website
- 64 food business verifications were completed and 45 proactive alcohol license Good Host Visits (GHV) were conducted
- 77% of all licensed premises in the district have now had GHV's
- 225 noise complaints received in the March/April period, with 128 received in April.
- Noise complaint response rates average 2% for urban areas and 83.3% for rural areas
- 172 infringements for stationary vehicle offences have been issued
- 144 Resource Consent applications received
- 83% of Resource Consents processed within timeframes was achieved in March and 94% in April 2021
- Discounts applied to consent processing for 2020/2021 to the end of April is \$43,768.88. For the same period last year there had been \$179,958.79 applied
- Building Consents received for March (210) and April (172) were higher than last year for both months
- 99.29% (March) and 100% (April) of consents were granted within statutory timeframes
- 99.66% of building consents were issued within the legislative timeframe of twenty working days during the 2020/21 Financial Year
- The average number of days to issue a consent for the same period is 12.29 working days (against the 20-day statutory requirement) and 32.61 calendar days
- Code Compliance Certificate compliance for March and April is 100%
- 75 Building Warrant of Fitness (BWOFF) audits were undertaken
- 37 Notices to Fix were issued for breaches of the Building Act and 4 Infringements were issued for building-related breaches
- A total of 23 Certificates of Acceptance were approved.
- 61 pool inspections were carried out the fail rate for this period was still around 30%
- A 30% increase in Hokianga Ferry fare revenue so far this financial year, thanks to COVID-19 and the strong domestic tourist market
- Roading contractors exceeding 90% compliance with maintenance. contracts in the first six months of 2020/21

## Governance

---

### Workshops

The months of March and April were busy with the following workshops:

- Long Term Plan
- Long Term Plan Pre-Deliberations
- District Plan Hazard Mapping
- Kaikohe District Sportsville
- Strategic Planning with FNHL
- Big Ideas Lab (two workshops)
- Elected Member Away Day and S35A
- 3 Waters with LGNZ
- Placemaking and Spatial Planning
- CouncilMARK Debrief
- Representation Review

The workshop format is invaluable in providing an overall strategic direction, which in turn allows Members at formal Council meetings to make informed decisions.

### Community Board Workshops

A Combined Community Board Workshop was held during the month of March, where the main topic of discussion centred around the Te Waka Eke Noa engagement campaign, the work of the Community Board Working Party and the upcoming Community Board Conference. Community Board members, along with Mayor and Councillors can expect a full report on key highlights from Conference at the next available Council meeting. There were several key topics identified for the upcoming workshops (June and September) and officers are working on setting these agendas in place.

### Training

The month of March and April were quiet in terms of training. The engagement campaign which ran the entire month of March, coupled with LTP deliberations and the high number of workshops meant that no training was undertaken (apart from Risk Essentials by Councillor Vujcich). Officers are about to commence the process of inviting elected members to discuss their development plans for 2021-22 with an invitation to Community Board members to also engage in a similar, albeit scaled down, process so that training opportunities can be managed effectively.

### Action Sheets/Decision Tracking

The 'Council Decision Tracking Assessment for the 2020 Calendar Year' report was received at the 5 May 2021 Assurance Risk and Finance Committee Meeting.

Officers will continue to ensure actions are updated and communicated back to members. Democracy Services staff are working through publishing both the 'Register of Resolutions', and Current Action Sheets for each meeting into LGHub for Elected Member reference. The process is that Current Action sheets with overdue actions will be emailed to Elected Members twice per meeting cycle, with each set of meeting minutes, and each agenda.

## CEO Office

### People and Capability

#### Creating Great Workplaces – Remote Working

The Great Workplaces project team is currently in evaluation stage and is expected to report to SLT in July with office usage statistics. Requested equipment was allocated and distributed to hybrid remote working staff. JBC Level Two has been reconfigured to accommodate the new way of working, increasing meeting rooms and a cohesive layout for permanent office-based staff, a few more tweaks are to be made to allow for an informal collaboration space.

#### Leader Development

Throughout March, 32 people leaders were engaged in individual discussions about the capability development of their team. Development priorities were examined, revealing some common areas across the teams. Other key themes that emerged from the discussions included resilience, difficult conversations and the difficulty in allocating time for new learning. The information gained from these detailed conversations with our people leaders will inform the 2021 strategy for leader development across FNDC.

#### “Your Voice” Survey 2020 – Group Sessions

Following the distribution of the “Your Voice” survey results to all teams, two group sessions were held in each of the main centers. These six open discussion sessions were led by the Chief Executive and members of the SLT. Enthusiastically attended, these sessions provided an opportunity for all FNDC people to speak their minds and get a committed response. The feedback gathered at these sessions was added to that from the survey, providing a powerful information base for the action plans within the groups.

#### CEO Office

The People & Capability Department has undergone consultation, confirming structural changes within the department that will better align the team to the organisation’s “up & out” focus. While the process is not completed this has impacted several individuals and the vacancies created have been advertised.

The new leader's induction took place in April in the new Kaikohe collaboration space, this session highlights key processes that the leaders will need to participate in as a start of their FNDC leadership journey.

## **Infrastructure & Asset Management Group**

All FNDC NTA staff have been re-seconded to the NTA for another three years, letters were sent to staff in early May.

A Programme Darwin steering group had been set up and is collaborating in preparation to present the Programme at a townhall session on Friday 21 May.

## **Strategic, Planning & Policy**

The Strategic Planning and Policy department have had several resignations, with concerns for retaining existing staff as they see development opportunities outside of FNDC. This has left vacancies for: Team Leader Māori Development, Māori Development Advisor and Policy Planner.

## **Corporate Services Group**

Acting-Up opportunities have continued, resulting in developing leadership capabilities across the groups. The General Manager – Corporate Services Group has continued to lead the Strategic Planning & Policy Group, while this position is being recruited. The Manager – Community & Customer Services is currently acting as General Manager - Corporate Services Group, with backfill provided by the Business Improvement Specialist.

The Council Chief Digital Officer resigned and is heading to Dunedin as Chief Digital Officer of WellSouth Primary Health Network. His last day is 4 June.

The reinvigorated recruitment campaign for the two-year fixed term Principal Advisor – Sustainable Procurement position has been successful, with a new appointment commencing in May 2021.

## **District Services Group**

The Building Services Department undertook a functional review with a revised structure implemented on 5 April 2021. The IANZ audit report played a significant part in the consideration of the structural arrangement for the building related functions. The Building Compliance team has moved from Environmental Services, with administrative support now reporting to and aligned with Building Consents, Building Inspections and Compliance. This has resulted in team members having a higher level of awareness of the statutory timeframes for the respective work streams and a better level of accountability, which has resulted in part to a 100% Compliance rate for both Building Consents and Code Compliance Certificates.

## Staffing, Salaries and Training

### Current Staffing Levels

| Actual Full Time Equivalent (FTE) at 30 April 2021 | Annual Plan Establishment (FTE) |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 343.50   | 382.85                          |

- The figure for the Actual FTE is based on permanent staff numbers
- Established FTE is based on permanent position numbers

### Salaries and Training

| Financial Performance as at 30 April 2021                     | YTD Actual   | YTD Budget   | YTD Actual vs Budget | Annual Budget |
|---|--------------|--------------|----------------------|---------------|
| Salary Costs  | \$24,735,392 | \$24,599,083 | -\$136,309           | \$30,452,195  |
| Training Costs  | \$326,728    | \$717,625    | \$390,897            | \$901,179     |
| <b>Trainings as a % of Salaries</b><br>(Sector average is 4%) | 1.3%         |              |                      | 3.0%          |

### Vacancies

| Department  | FTE Available |
|---|---------------|
| CEO/Communications/People & Capabilities  | 2.0           |
| Corporate Services  | 5.0           |
| District Services   | 12.00         |
| Infrastructure & Asset Management/NTA   | 7.0           |
| Strategic Planning & Policy   | 5.0           |
| <b>FNDC TOTAL (FTE) * includes part time &amp; full time EST Position Vacancies</b> | <b>30.0</b>   |

## Customer Service

### Customer Experience Programme Customer Satisfaction

We have launched our new digital first customer feedback surveying platform and have experienced some amazing results. The volume of data and the insights we are obtaining are substantially better than our old system. This is allowing us to understand the moments that matter to customers and help us to identify improvement opportunities.

The system has tools where we can engage with customers as needed, workflows for customers to receive call backs and the ability for teams to have internal dialogue - all contributing to a lift in customer centricity. The users' feedback has been overwhelmingly positive and staff engagement with the system is high. Teams are using the tool to celebrate our successes, feedback to the customer as required and discuss improvement opportunities internally that are linked to specific comments.

All service request teams and applications are now live. Our venues will soon be added by using on site QR codes.

Property File Requests and LIM's have are now incorporated into the programme. A lot of organisation effort has gone into setting these electronic systems up for these teams and the feedback from their customers is that they are very satisfied. Their scores are 4.13 and 4.32 respectively (scores are out of 5). Comments from customers are highlighting further improvement opportunities.

Note: The survey approach has changed in the new system and venues are yet to be added. Results to date are showing a lift in our performance and the larger volume of response has removed some fluctuations we experienced in the old system.

#### Customer Satisfaction (new system, scale out of 5)

# 3.75

▲ 3.75

6 Month TREND

Company — Rating Target: 4.25 --



TOTAL RESP.  
1,177

SATISFIED  
807

NEUTRAL  
123

NOT SATISFIED  
247

SURVEYS SENT  
2,973

RESP. RATE  
40.3%



How satisfied are you with your recent experience with the Far North District Council?

total 1,178

How many times did you need to contact us?

total 682

| CATEGORY         | RESPONSES | %  |
|------------------|-----------|----|
| Very Satisfied   | 467       | 40 |
| Satisfied        | 340       | 29 |
| Neutral          | 123       | 10 |
| Unsatisfied      | 107       | 9  |
| Very Unsatisfied | 140       | 12 |

| CATEGORY              | RESPONSES | %  |
|-----------------------|-----------|----|
| 1 time - when lodging | 334       | 49 |
| 2 times               | 143       | 21 |
| 3 times               | 81        | 12 |
| 5 or more times       | 77        | 11 |
| 4 times               | 47        | 7  |

### Net Promotor Score (reputation benchmark, scale -100 to +100)

NPS

9.6  
▲ 9.6

Based on you recent experience, how likely is it that you would recommend contacting the Council to someone...

total 685

Actions ▼

| CATEGORY   | RESPONSES | %  |
|------------|-----------|----|
| Promoters  | 301       | 44 |
| Passives   | 149       | 22 |
| Detractors | 235       | 34 |

The below graph highlights the monthly Customer Satisfaction results and volume of responses from the old and new systems.



## Health, Safety & Wellbeing (HSW)

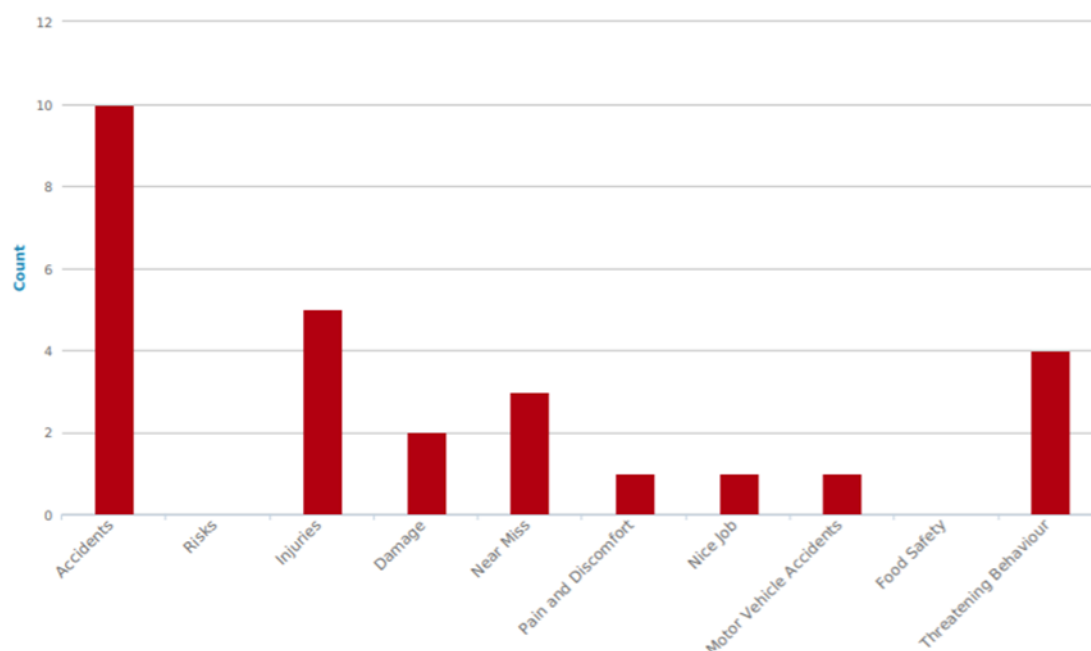
### Summary of Activities

1. H&S inspections undertaken at the new Northern Animal Shelter - Kaitaia with Infrastructure Capital Works team and contract partners.
2. The CEO and Manager – HSW attended an on-site risk review of Opua Cycle Trail, this was just one action on our lists of risk mitigations to ensure we are doing everything practicable to keep people safe.
3. Customer Conflict Awareness training delivered to 78 front line staff in April across 6 sessions.
4. Remote Working Risk Assessment reviews for those staff working under hybrid model have been undertaken, 68% completed at the time of this reporting period. Date and Promise to have all completed committed to by People Leaders by 14 May 2021.
5. Lone Worker Safety Solutions & Vehicle GPS Project – phase 2 installations to 15 vehicles scheduled for 3 May with end user training scheduled for 10 May 2021.
6. Investigation involvement post the Hobson Ave, Kerikeri incident. This incident was notified by the contractor to WorkSafe. Final report expected in May.

### PeopleSafe Stories Types during the reporting period Far North District Council

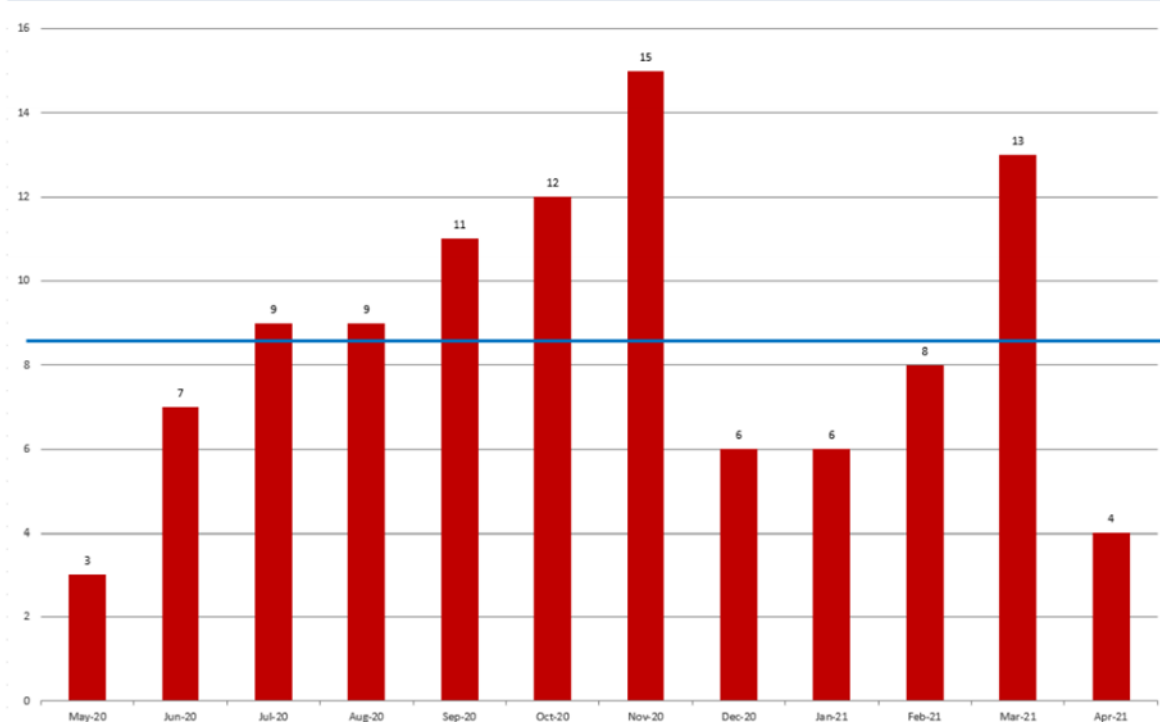


### Stories Report Summary



## PeopleSafe 12 Month Rolling Incident Rate

PeopleSafe Events/Incidents –Rolling 12 months to Date



During the two-month reporting period there were 17 PeopleSafe incidents/events told, covering 27 story types. The average number of incidents per month has increased by one and now sits at 8.5 incidents/month.

## Communication

### Activity summary

Publicising the *Navigating Our Course* consultation was a communication focus for the Council during March and April. Other communication issues included the easing of water restrictions, the tsunami warning on 5 March and a water quality incident affecting properties at Waipapa.

### Media releases

The team issued 16 media releases during the eight-week reporting period. Three of these were about the lifting or easing of water restrictions. Two were about a boil water notice for Waipapa properties. The other 11 were about:

- The Council processing more resource consent applications within statutory timeframes
- The opening of the Kerikeri Men's Shed which was partly funded by the Council's Infrastructure Fund
- The *Navigating Our Course* consultation
- The Council's new northern area animal shelter
- The appointment of Darren Edwards to the General Manager – Strategic Planning and Policy position
- A working group established to explore upgrade options for the Taipa wastewater scheme
- Grants allocated by Te Hiku and Bay of Islands-Whangaroa Community Boards
- The Council's decision to lease the former NorthTec campus at Rawene to a community education group
- The Far North Youth Council which is seeking new members
- The Council's 2021 CouncilMARK™ assessment report
- The temporary closure of a fuel facility at Pukenui Wharf which the Council is upgrading

Twelve of these media releases were published in two or more local newspapers, so the team was successful at getting Council's messages into the public domain:

- 4/16 media releases were published in four local newspapers
- 2/16 media releases were published in three local newspapers
- 6/16 media releases were published in two local newspapers
- 4/16 media releases were published in one local newspaper

### Media enquiries

The team responded to 40 media enquiries in March and April. As with the previous reporting period, the top topic of enquiry was Council water supplies, which accounted for six enquiries. Other main subjects of interest were new rating proposals and roading issues.

### Social media

The Communications and Engagement Teams were active on social media, particularly Facebook, during March and April. Outputs included:

- 92 Facebook posts, 56 of which were about the *Navigating Our Course* consultation. Other key content topics were the tsunami on 5 March and water restrictions
- 87 new Facebook page 'likes', increasing the number of people who 'like' the Council's Facebook page from 6,152 to 6,239

**Mayoral support**

The team drafted eight Mayoral columns/blogs about:

- Placemaking projects in Te Hiku Ward
- The district's response to the tsunami warning on 5 March
- Significant Natural Areas the Council has mapped for planning purposes
- The housing crisis and the Government's Housing Acceleration Fund
- The Three Waters Reform Programme
- The death of Prince Philip Duke of Edinburgh
- The Local Government (Rating of Whenua Māori) Amendment Bill
- The District Plan Review

The team researched and wrote speech notes for the launch of Arvida's Te Puna Waiora development in Kerikeri and for an Anzac Day service the Mayor attended. It also wrote a Mayoral testimonial for the Bald Angels Charitable Trust to include in its applications to funding agencies.

**CEO support**

The team produced nine editions of weekly newsletter *The Weekender*, as well as talking points for weekly videos to staff.

**Other support and outputs**

- Weekly, full-page adverts in four local newspapers in March about the *Navigating Our Course* consultation
- Fortnightly, full-page adverts in four local newspapers in April about new speed limits and maritime facility upgrades
- Supporting the Infrastructure and Asset Management Team's response to a water supply incident at Waipapa

## Strategy

### Corporate Planning

#### Long Term Plan (LTP)

March activity for the LTP was centred around consultation as part of the Navigating Our Course engagement programme and planning opportunities for submitters to speak to their submissions at public hearings at multiple locations. Consultation finished in early April 2021, and the process of developing recommendations ahead of decision-making commenced.

Steady progress continues to be made on developing the LTP-proper for audit towards the end of May 2021.

### Strategy Development, Bylaws and Policies

#### Far North 2100 District Strategy

In March 2021 Council consulted on a draft Far North 2100 strategy. The draft strategy envisaged how the Far North might look in 80 years' time, based on our vision 'He Whenua Rangatira – a district of sustainable prosperity and wellbeing'.

Consultation closed on 6 April 2021 with 49 submissions received. Staff are analysing the submissions and are reporting back in an Elected Member and Community Board Chair workshop planned for 26 May 2021 on the outcome of the consultation and options going forward for a District Strategy.

#### Spatial Planning

Staff successfully conducted a workshop on placemaking and spatial planning with Councillors and Community Board Chairs on 15 April 2021. A primary objective of this workshop was to hear the views on what spatial planning is required by Council over the three-year period starting 1 July 2021.

Staff were asked to review previously developed and in progress place based plans and report back on the gap between these plans the direction setting and strategic outcomes that could come from proposed spatial plans for focus areas across the Far North District.

Staff are preparing the requested gap analysis and refining a set of criteria that will determine where and what form the spatial planning initiatives will take over the three-year period starting 1 July 2021. This will be reported back to the Strategy and Policy Committee once completed.

#### Climate Change

The first meeting of the Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee was held at the Northland Regional Council Offices in Whangārei on 12 April 2021. The chair and deputy chair for the committee were elected and a request was made to each Council to develop a consistent policy for the remuneration of iwi representatives on the Committee. This policy is being developed as a collaborative effort between the respective democracy services and governance teams of each Council.

The committee also heard the regional climate change adaptation programme that is being developed jointly by each of the four Northland Councils. Progress on this will be reported back to each Joint Committee meeting.

Staff have initiated a policy project, following the policy development guidelines, aimed at embedding climate change mitigation and adaptation considerations into the management and governance



decision making processes of the Far North District Council.

### **Regional Accessibility Strategy**

Over the reporting period staff continued to provide support to the collaborative cross Council development of a Regional Accessibility Strategy that is being led by Whangārei District Council.

### **Parks and Reserves**

Staff are planning a workshop on 10 June 2021 with elected members and community board chairs that will propose the modification and revision of the existing reserves policy. This will inform a draft parks and reserves policy that will be put to the Strategy and Policy Committee for approval to go out for public consultation.

### **Bylaw Programme**

On 8 April 2021 Council approved that the Solid Waste Bylaw continue without amendment. The Council also agreed that the bylaw will be reviewed once new relevant legislation comes into effect.

Staff will be putting forward the following reports to the May 2021 Strategy and Policy Committee meeting

1. proposal for a Treated Water Supply Bylaw to go out for public consultation.
2. proposal to make a new parking bylaw and a new road use bylaw.
3. proposal to make a bylaw that addresses the problems related to the maintenance of on-site wastewater disposal systems in the Far North District.

Staff have commenced the research that will consider whether a bylaw is required to regulate the access and use of vehicles on beaches.

### **Policy Programme**

Staff will be putting forward to the May 2021 Strategy and Policy Committee Meeting a proposal that the Committee recommend to Council that the Psychoactive Substances Local Approved Policy continue without amendment.

Staff have commenced a social impact assessment that is required to inform a review of the Class Four Gambling and Totalisator Agency Board venues policy.

Staff have commenced a review of the following eight policies commonly referred to in Council as 'roading policies':

1. Community initiated infrastructure roading contribution
2. Dust management policy
3. Limits of council responsibility for formation maintenance of roads
4. Private roads and rights of way
5. Road maintenance policy
6. Road mirrors private crossings policy
7. Road naming and property numbering
8. Road speed limits

## Iwi/ Hapū Relationships

### Māori representation

At its February meeting, Council resolved “to discuss with the community via informal consultation, to gauge community feedback on Māori representation and report back to 8 April 2021 Council meeting”.

To gauge community sentiment, staff ran an informal consultation process on Representation Review and Māori Wards during the month of March 2021. Responders had the following mechanisms to have their say – via an online survey, feedback forms, oral and email submissions.

From this consultation we received feedback from 511 community members (over 18). An overwhelming majority of 408 noted their support for the establishment of Māori Wards. The balance saw 91 against and 12 were void.

While this information was presented to the April 2021 Council meeting, it was left to lie on the table. A subsequent Notice of Motion was raised and resulted in an Extraordinary Council Meeting being scheduled for 4 May 2021.

### Te Oneroa-a-Tōhe Board

Having formally notified Te Rautaki o Te Oneroa-a-Tohe / Ninety Mile Beach Management Plan in January, a formal blessing ceremony took place at Korou Kore Marae, Ahipara on 16 April 2021.

Council was represented on the day by Councillor Radich and supported by staff.



Work now begins on implementing the ‘desired outcomes’ of the plan. Staff have convened a working party that is responsible for developing an action plan for delivering on the outcomes of the plan; and a communications / education plan to raise awareness about the plan.

### Iwi Local Government Authorities Chief Executives Forum (ILGACE)

On 3 March 2021 staff were notified that Sam Napia, Chief Executive Te Rūnanga-a-Iwi-O Ngāpuhi would be filling the co-chair vacancy left by Toa Faneva. The ILGACE meeting scheduled for March 2021 was cancelled due to the proximity of the announcement and the next meeting has been scheduled for May 2021.

### Māori Business Awards

The Te Taitokerau Māori Business Awards 2021 took place in Kerikeri at the Turner Centre on 12 March 2021. This is the first time the biennial event, hosted by Te Hīringa Trust, has been held outside of Whangārei.

The Far North District Council sponsored the *Best Not for Profit Māori Enterprise Award*, with Hihiaua Cultural Centre Trust judged best in this category. North Drill Ltd was awarded the prestigious Taitokerau Māori Business of the Year, supreme award.

The evening was attended by Mayor Carter, Councillors Smith and Stratford supported by the Chief Executive Officer and staff.

## Council workshop

Staff held a further workshop with Council on the provisions of the Local Government Act 2002 to enable better participation of Māori in its decision-making processes. Staff provided guidance and are working through the changes to the Working with Māori Policy Statement for the Long Term Plan.

## Māori liaison

Staff continue to support the infrastructure team seeking consents on behalf of Council for; Kaitāia, Kaikohe, Kohukohu and Hihi wastewater treatment plants.

In particular, Te Hono have been developing tangata whenua consultation plans for the Kaitāia and Kaikohe plants, as well as providing advice on next steps for both Kohukohu and Hihi and have assisted with consultation.

The Whenua Māori Programme is an ambitious and exciting initiative, jointly lead by Māori Land Court (MLC) and Te Puni Kokiri (TPK), designed to stimulate social and economic development where there is a high concentration of whenua Māori. To date MLC, TPK, Far North District Council, Whangarei District Council and Kaipara District Council have met to consider how we might combine local authority initiatives, Māori entity interests, and with other stakeholders provide information and opportunities to our Māori Land Owners (MLO), through a series of 'Expo' days throughout Te Tai Tokerau. The 'Expo' is in the early development phase and currently the 3 Councils have only committed to providing venues. The proposed dates are in September 2021 (Saturdays). Te Hono will continue to participate in the working party.

Te Hono Māori Development Team had 164 queries inclusive of rate remission advice for the months of March and April 2021 along with 27 referrals to external agencies, mostly to the Māori Land Court for further information. The Team are still turning e all Requests For Service queries around in 1 day.

Te Hono met with colleagues in Finance to discuss the reviewed suite of rates remission policies. The policies were reviewed in consideration of the changes to legislation around Whenua Māori. Staff across the Council will continue to collaborate as we work through the significant changes that have come about to the Local Government Rating Act 2002.

## Community Wellbeing

### Community Development & Funding

Between 26 January and 7 April 2021, the Community Boards distributed \$92,589.50 to 17 applicants. This included \$20,000 to the Houhora Big Game and Sports Fishing Club for wharf refurbishment, \$20,000 to St Clements Anglican Māori Church in Ahipara for church restoration, \$12,800 to BaySports for Stadium refurbishment. 2 applications supported community development, 9 were for events and 7 were for infrastructure.

The Kai Ora Fund, the purpose of which is to enable Northlanders to eat nutritious and sustainably grown local food, closed on 24 March 2021. Started by the Far North District Council and MahiTahi PHO, the fund has grown year on year. The 2021 Kai Ora Fund is a partnership between MahiTahi Hauora, The Far North District Council, Te Puni Kōkiri, Northland Inc, Kaipara District Council, Northland District Health Board, The Ministry of Social Development, Whangārei District Council and Foundation North.

The Totara North Community Plan was completed and received by the Bay of Islands-Whangaroa

Community Board. The plan was developed through a series of well attended community meetings, held between January and March 2021, and the draft document was socialised with the wider community at a 'community day' on Sunday 21<sup>st</sup> March 2021. The Totara North Community has completed the Totara North Community Plan to address changing community needs and wants and captures their vision, values and goals.

Youth development has had some notable successes with 3 rangatahi being selected for Outward Bound, supported by the Community Boards and Mayors Taskforce for Jobs scholarships as well as 3 TUIA candidates being selected. TUIA aims to develop the leadership capacity of young Māori in communities throughout New Zealand and is a programme that involves the Mayor and Elected Members mentoring rangatahi on a one-to-one basis to encourage and enhance leadership skills. Council also supports TUIA candidates to attend wananga across New Zealand.

Sport Northland continue to deliver to Far North communities through various programmes and initiatives. Through the Top Energy WaterSafe Programme, 42 schools, 3,955 students and 324 teachers received dryland water safety sessions during term 4 in 2020. In addition to this, 33 schools will receive the wider programme (involving 4,000 students). A successful KiwiSport application resulted in skateboard ramps and obstacles placed at both Okaihau College and Taipa Area School. Both schools have agreed to be custodians of the equipment which is portable. It is hoped that in 2021 a skateboard event utilising this equipment can be organised.

Sport events are picking up after the majority were cancelled in 2020 due to C-19. Far North residents make up approx. 40% of participants across the events. The Kaitaia Run/Walk attracted 68% of Far North residents, the Paihia Run/Walk Paihia 39%, the Kerikeri Half Marathon 28% & the Conbrio 5km 51%. The attraction of 2,110 participants to the Far North for events represents an opportunity for the Far North to maximise the economic return of these short-term visitors. The Northland Waste Kerikeri Half Marathon continues to attract approx. 38% from outside Northland. Other initiatives include Green Prescriptions, He Oranga Pounamu, Active Workplaces, Strength and Balance, Community Connectors, and bringing great opportunities to Far North communities like working with Northland Rugby and Kaikohe Rugby Football & Sports Club to host Mitre 10 game v Waikato in Kaikohe.

## **District Planning**

### **Development of the new District Plan**

The draft District Plan was released for community feedback on 6 March 2021. The non-statutory engagement allowed for Far North communities to become aware of the new draft plan, understand how it may affect them and provide feedback on key issues.

Making available a draft district plan allows all of the community to get better acquainted with the new digital plan format – it's scope and scale. How the plan now manages our significant resource management issues, and how this management approach may affect landowners individually.

Having a draft plan also allows for change before taking a proposed plan to the community.

On some topics, further engagement may be required before the proposed plan is notified. Feedback on the draft will assist us in determining how and where this is necessary. When all feedback is received and analysed, we will be in a better position to organise staff and resources to target any

such process.

Engagement has been integrated with the development of the plan since 2016 and the Let's Plan Together campaign. The draft policy framework was shared with communities in 2018 and 2019. This current stage of engagement shares the spatial planning product of applying the plan's policies. This means that information is much more specific to places and properties. This opportunity for participation has been shared with all ratepayers via mail out and promoted in Far North media. The feedback period for the draft District Plan has been extended to 6 May 2021.

Iwi engagement will be taking place in May and June 2021.

Targeted engagement on Significant Natural Areas, which are also contained in the plan, will be taking place through May and June 2021.

## **Northland Forward Together**

The Northland Forward Together Strategic Planning workshop was held on 29 March. Topics for discussion were RMA reform, three waters, solid waste, S-maps and working in the road corridor.

At the Chief Executives meeting on the 15 February 2021, the Chief Executives proposed placing Solid Waste Recycling as one of the four Priority Projects to replace the "Refinement of NTA". The Mayoral forum held on 1 March acknowledged that the Northland Transportation Alliance (NTA) was now effectively 'business as usual' (although FNDC undertook to have further discussion on matters specific to it). However, it was essential that there were clear communications and updates from the NTA to each of the councils. The Mayoral Forum, rather than just Solid Waste Recycling, now be Waste Management and confirmed as one of the four areas of focus (in conjunction with Four Waters, Regional Economic Development and Climate Change).

The Mayoral Forum expressed concerns about withdrawal of Government Funding for some Te Tai Tokerau Projects. The Forum requested staff to engage with the Northland Provincial Growth Unit and provide feedback for the next Mayoral Forum. It was requested that the next report identify any projects that may have changed or not yet landed.

## **Corporate**

---

### **Transformation and Assurance**

#### **Audit and Assurance**

The Internal Audit and Assurance Programme for the 2021 calendar year has been rescoped and was presented to the March meeting of the Assurance, Risk and Finance Committee.

#### **Risk**

Regular reporting, to the Assurance, Risk and Finance Committee, on the top organisational risks and their treatment plans continues.

Four risk progress reports were included in the March 2021 Risk Management Report to the Assurance, Risk and Finance Committee. The Risk Progress Reports on ARF001 Climate Change Risk, ARF004 Asset Management, ARF009 Customer Service Delivery, and ARF013 Drinking Water Resilience were presented.

The first in a regular programme of deep dive risk sessions was held in March. The session explored the climate change risk.

A progress report on the risks associated with the programme of the externally funded “shovel ready” projects that form part of the Governments economic response to the COVID-19 pandemic was presented to the Assurance, Risk and Finance Committee in March.

## **Transformation**

The Creating and Enabling Great Workplaces Programme is in an ‘Implementation’ phase. The new operating rhythm is being bedded in after a delay due to an increase in the COVID-19 alert level earlier in the year. The final phase of the programme is to undertake an evaluation that will check on staff experience and the extent to which forecasted benefits have been realised.



## **Digital Information Services**

### **Executive Summary**

The period has seen several projects and activities being delivered or progressed to rollout. Of note is the start of our internal Digital Information Services Governance meeting that is aimed at providing internal teams an avenue for proposed enhancements and/or changes to the existing workplans. This was particularly beneficial with the new Consentium platform what has been put in place as part of Kāinga Ora – Homes and Communities.

The ICT Operations and Delivery team has progressed with several Cyber and ICT Security enhancements, most notably the introduction of multi factor authentication that are aimed at protecting our people from external threats and support the wider remote working system access.

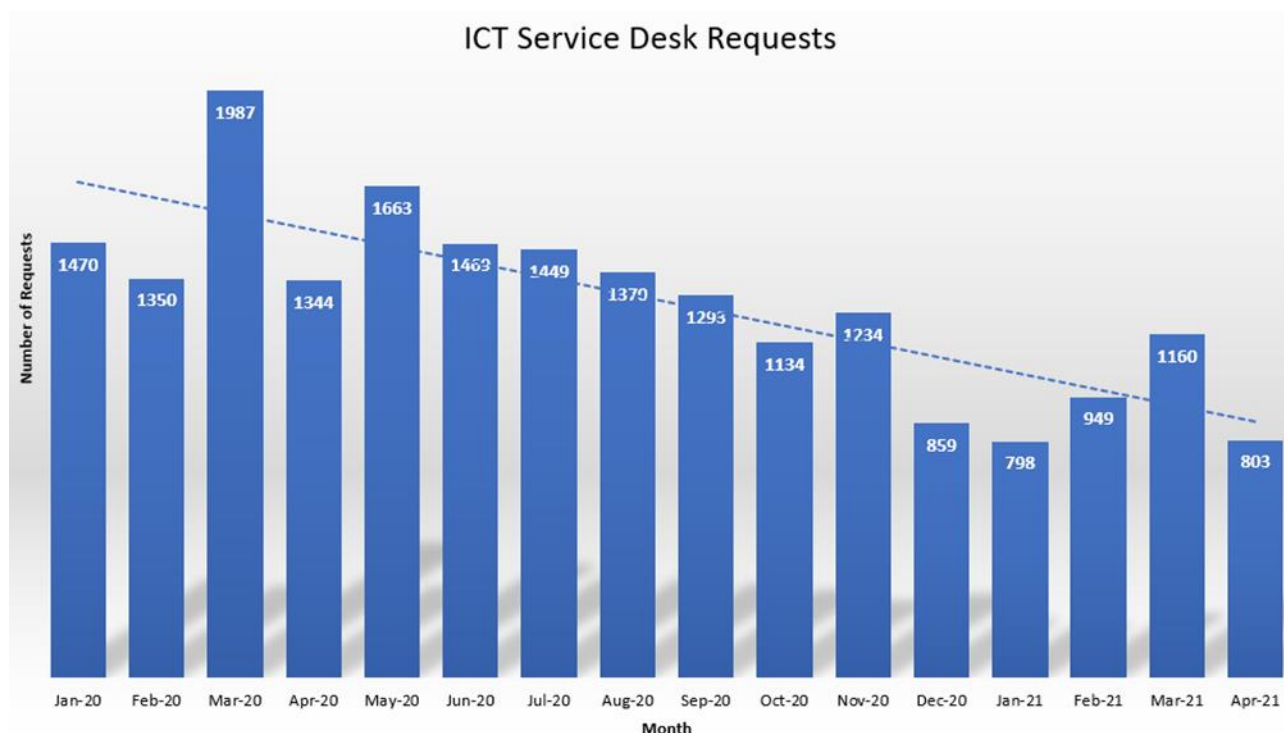
The rollout of the CiAnywhere Upgrade for HR has been progressing with the new environment upgraded and new functionality for people leaders released. Work is still progressing with the remaining part of the phase one rollout as well as the review of Payroll. Further enhancements are planned to be reviewed that would bring the full function into line. These modules include H&S, Performance, Training and Risk.

### **ICT Operations and Delivery:**

#### **ICT Service Desk Requests**

The number of ICT Service Desk Requests received during the March-April 2021 period was 1,963. This number is up slightly from 1,747 which were received in the January-February 2021 period. Overall, the number of requests lodged have trended downwards over the last 12 months. This is most likely due to staff getting more comfortable with working from home and other improvements that have been made to our systems.

The number of outstanding requests yet to be resolved is 391. 111 of these requests are either awaiting the requester to respond, a vendor or the delivery of equipment.



### **External Phone Calls (Microsoft Teams Calling)**

Work has further progressed to migrate external phone calls (making and receiving) from Skype for Business to Microsoft Teams Calling. The technical configuration and testing have been completed by Spark and our ICT team.

Twenty 'Early Adopter' staff and the Digital Information Services team have been successfully migrated over to Teams. The remaining departments are scheduled to be migrated over in the week beginning Monday 17<sup>th</sup> May 2021.

### **Contact Centre Phone System Project**

Work is currently underway with Datacom to migrate the existing Contact Centre phone system to a new cloud-based SaaS (Software as a Service) system called Genesys Cloud. This will provide a better customer and employee experience and will integrate with Microsoft Teams. The new platform will also provide greater options for remote working should future lockdowns or significant events affect the contact centre team currently based in Kaikohe.

The hardware has been installed at Datacom and the system has been configured. The next step is to complete the Contact Centre staff training.

### **Library RFID Project**

Work has progressed on the project to insert RFID (radio-frequency identification) tags into library books to enable the use of self-service kiosks in our Libraries. The project team are currently assessing and scoring tender submissions.

## **Multi Factor Authentication (MFA)**

MFA has now been rolled out to all FNDC staff and contractors. We are currently working with the Elected Members to get them set up as well. We are using the Microsoft Authenticator app which is installed on your smart phone or a hard token can be supplied if necessary.

MFA is used to ensure that when you log into a computer system you are who you say you are, by requiring at least two pieces of evidence to prove your identity. It adds a layer of protection to the sign-in process and reduces the risk of unauthorised access to sensitive data.

## **CiAnywhere Human Resource Planning (HRP)**

The new internet browser version of CiAnywhere HRP and eRecruitment system has gone live. This enables staff to access their leave, timesheets, pay information, training bookings, etc. without having to be in the office or use Citrix. The system also includes an eRecruitment module that replaces the existing Scout Talent recruitment system.

## **Penetration Testing**

Penetration testing (also called a pen test) is the practice of testing a computer system, network or web application to find security vulnerabilities that a cybercriminal could attack or exploit. Penetration testing has been completed by an independent specialist computer security company on our new CiAnywhere system to provide assurance that it is safe and secure.

## **Contractor User Account Review**

A detailed contractor user account review took place in March/April to ensure that all contractors that have access to our systems are still valid. Processes have been improved to ensure that no contractor user accounts are still active when they are no longer required.

## **Computer Security Incident Management System**

We have implemented a Computer Security Incident Management System to assist us in improving computer security incident response capabilities and to enable us to handle any incidents effectively.

Computer security incident response has become an important component of ICT Security Frameworks. New types of security-related incidents are constantly emerging. Preventive activities based on the results of risk assessments can lower the number of incidents, but not all incidents can be prevented. An incident response capability is therefore necessary for rapidly detecting incidents, minimising loss and destruction, mitigating the weaknesses that were exploited, and restoring ICT services.

The Computer Security Incident Management System includes:

- Quick Guide to Incident Handling
- Computer Security Incident Management Policy
- Standard Operating Procedures for:
  - Incident Identification
  - Data Breach
  - Denial of Service
  - Inappropriate Use
  - Malicious Code
  - Ransomware
  - Unauthorised Access
  - Generic Incident Response
- Manuals for Incident Response and Management
- Incident Management Plan
- Communication Strategy
- Incident Response Form
- Readiness Checklist
- Training Scenarios
- Resource References
- Contacts List

### **Cybersecurity Awareness Programme**

We have purchased an online Cybersecurity Awareness Programme from SSS (IT Security Specialists) and ALGIM that is being rolled out to all staff and elected members. Attackers are always looking for a way into Council systems, which is why it is important for everyone in our organisation to have a good awareness of information security. The team are working on the configuration of the system, and communications will go out to all staff over the next few weeks.

### **Data Insights and Programme Delivery:**

#### **Online Services**

An initiative encouraging building and resource practitioners to become registered customers so that they can lodge building and resource applications online continues. We have targeted customers who frequently lodge applications and contact them as and when there is enough capacity for the Call Centre to process the registrations. Members of the Online Services project team will be supporting District Services at the Building Practitioners meeting in May to promote this further.

The mobile inspection functionality for food business is in production including an end to end digital process for Administrators, Inspectors and customers. We are developing a solution that will automatically update inspection result to MPI with preliminary testing this month.

The ability for Pathway inspection bookings to communicate automatically with Inspector's Outlook Calendars is to be enabled in May. This will mean any addition, update or deletion of inspection bookings in Pathway will be automatically updated in the Inspectors Outlook calendar. Likewise, updates made in an inspector's calendar will be passed back to Pathway. This is expected to reduce the amount of manual effort required by Administration Support teams by approximately two days a month.

In the 2021/2022 dog registration year you will be able to make your dog registration renewal payment online. This gives convenience to our customers to make payments when it best suits them. Staff have more efficient processes to issue the tags when dogs are registered making them excited too. Tags will be posted out within 10 working days of receipt of payment. Note: this option is only for re-registering existing dogs.

Digital Information Services have been asked to build a solution which will allow Consentium to provide Council with building application information that we are required to keep as a territorial authority. This information will need to be stored as property file information. We have used this opportunity to develop a solution which is consistent with existing processes and doesn't create an administrative burden for Building Services staff. A prototype has been developed and reviewed internally, this will be presented to Consentium for feedback followed by testing and training.

Permits and licenses which are also part of Stage 4 are on hold until the Consentium work has been completed. Permits and licenses are now planned to start early in June.

### **Enterprise Data Warehouse (EDW)**

The reports for Vision 2020 have been developed in Power BI using the data directly from Pathway, these are being verified by the BI team before they are handed over to the Quality Manager for user acceptance testing. In parallel to this a raw vault has been built, this stores historical data from Councils' systems, data is presented to the business vault so that business rules can be applied.

Daily stand-ups with our specialist partner SQL Services has enabled close collaboration and ensured a quick response when clarifying questions and identifying the objects required for the reporting solution. Providing SQL Services access to Microsoft Teams has supported a quick turnaround of response times and enabled project agility.

### **Information Management:**

#### **Property File ePathway Applications**

#### **Objective Support**

Support requests resolved: 240

Files and folders created and approved: 248

Objective users' changes/movements: 54

### **Northland Information Management Professionals (NIMP)**

The quarterly meeting of Northland Information Management Professionals was hosted by FNDC on 7 May. Matters discussed:

- The need for cohesive information management compliance messaging across the 4 councils and how we can share such resources.
- Strategies for tackling Information Management Standard compliance issues and build.

- Relationships with internal stakeholders to ensure IM is embedded in new systems and processes.
- Extending the networking group invitation to other Northland agencies subject to the Public Records Act.
- Mailroom processes between councils.
- Consentium.
- Data quality and what poor data can mean for our legislative requirements to hold reliable trustworthy information.

## **Business Intelligence and GIS**

### **Enterprise Datawarehouse**

The BI team has completed the review of the draft model. Clarification of vision 2020 requirements with the contractor to correctly populate the dashboard was done. A best practice workshop was held to inform the BI team of the key areas to keep in mind to ensure integrity of the Enterprise Datawarehouse.

### **CiAnywhere Human Resources**

The BI team continued supporting People & Capability to configure CiAnywhere key processes and training for subject matter experts. Technical assistance from the BI team will be provided with the launch of new modules in production as well as further development of automated people movements process.

### **Ask Nicely**

The BI team has continued the work on the Ask Nicely survey application, extending information extracted from Pathway to include RFS, E-Lim's and Property files requests.

### **QV Electronic data Exchange "Blue Slips"**

The BI team has continued work on the QV "Blue slips" process. This process will improve the accuracy of the property data and automate some of the manual tasks carried out by that team, allowing them to concentrate on other areas. The first will deployed shortly for testing by the users and refinement of their existing business process.

### **Draft District Plan**

With the assistance of the GIS team the Draft ePlan went live early March.

### **Open Data**

The GIS team has soft launched the FNDC open data portal. This enabled FNDC to efficiently make data available to the public with the use of an external portal.



## Operational Financial Performance - As at 30 April 2021

## Whole of Council

Statement of  
Operational Financial Performance  
for the period ending 30 April 2021

|   | Year to date             |                          |                     | Actuals<br>YTD as a<br>% of Total<br>Budget | Actuals<br>YTD as a %<br>of Annual<br>Forecast | Full year                            |  |                                 |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|---|--|--------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
|   | YTD<br>Actual<br>\$000's | YTD<br>Budget<br>\$000's | Variance<br>\$000's |   |  | Total<br>Annual<br>Budget<br>\$000's | Total<br>Annual<br>Forecast<br>\$000's | Forecast<br>Variance<br>\$000's |
| <b>Operations</b>                         |                          |                          |                     |   |  |                                      |  |                                 |
| <b>Operational income</b>                 |                          |                          |                     |   |  |                                      |  |                                 |
| Rates - general (excl water supply rates) | 74,706                   | 74,604                   | 101                 | 83%   | 83%  | 89,525                               | 89,525                                 | 0                               |
| Rates - penalties                         | 868                      | 1,555                    | (686)               | 42%   | 42%  | 2,073                                | 2,073                                  | 0                               |
| Fees & charges (inc water supply rates)   | 15,414                   | 14,998                   | 416                 | 90%   | 90%  | 17,059                               | 17,132                                 | 73                              |
| Central govt subsidies - operational      | 8,369                    | 8,271                    | 98                  | 77%   | 73%  | 10,825                               | 11,501                                 | 676                             |
| Other income                              | 6,753                    | 2,027                    | 4,727               | 183%  | 87%  | 3,686                                | 7,780                                  | 4,093                           |
| <b>Capital income</b>                     |                          |                          |                     |   |  |                                      |  |                                 |
| Central govt subsidies - new works        | 4,465                    | 3,618                    | 847                 | 48%   | 40%  | 9,354                                | 11,115                                 | 1,761                           |
| Central govt subsidies - renewals         | 11,839                   | 12,970                   | (1,131)             | 68%   | 76%  | 17,378                               | 15,486                                 | (1,892)                         |
| Other contributions                       | 15,014                   | 0                        | 15,014              | 0%  | 71%  | 0                                    | 21,018                                 | 21,018                          |
| Development contributions                 | 0                        | 0                        | 0                   | 0%  | 0%   | 0                                    | 0                                      | 0                               |
| <b>Total operating income</b>             | <b>137,429</b>           | <b>118,044</b>           | <b>19,385</b>       |   |  | <b>149,901</b>                       | <b>175,631</b>                         | <b>25,730</b>                   |
| <b>Operating Expenditure</b>              |                          |                          |                     |   |  |                                      |  |                                 |
| Payroll related costs                     | 24,825                   | 24,599                   | (226)               | 82%   | 81%  | 30,452                               | 30,471                                 | (19)                            |
| Other staffing related costs              | 1,403                    | 1,767                    | 364                 | 64%   | 66%  | 2,181                                | 2,139                                  | 42                              |
| General expenses                          | 6,186                    | 8,138                    | 1,952               | 64%   | 64%  | 9,691                                | 9,678                                  | 13                              |
| Rate remissions                           | 2,298                    | 2,074                    | (225)               | 102%  | 102%   | 2,257                                | 2,257                                  | 0                               |
| Contractor & professional fees            | 38,608                   | 40,749                   | 2,141               | 74%   | 64%  | 52,442                               | 60,091                                 | (7,649)                         |
| Grants and donations                      | 1,370                    | 1,415                    | 45                  | 83%   | 82%  | 1,647                                | 1,677                                  | (30)                            |
| Allocations (direct and indirect)         | 0                        | 0                        | 0                   | 0%  | 0%   | (0)                                  | (0)                                    | 0                               |
| Interest costs                            | 1,118                    | 1,429                    | 311                 | 65%   | 65%  | 1,715                                | 1,715                                  | 0                               |
| <b>Sub-total</b>                          | <b>75,809</b>            | <b>80,172</b>            | <b>4,363</b>        |   |  | <b>100,384</b>                       | <b>108,027</b>                         | <b>(7,643)</b>                  |
| Depreciation and other asset costs        | 28,486                   | 28,871                   | 385                 |   |  | 34,645                               | 34,645                                 | 0                               |
| Gain/Loss on Disposal                     | 1,594                    | 0                        |                     |   |  | 0                                    | 0                                      | 0                               |
| <b>Total operating expenditure</b>        | <b>105,888</b>           | <b>109,043</b>           | <b>4,748</b>        |   |  | <b>135,029</b>                       | <b>142,672</b>                         | <b>(7,643)</b>                  |
| <b>Net operating surplus/(deficit)</b>    | <b>31,540</b>            | <b>9,001</b>             | <b>22,539</b>       |   |  | <b>14,872</b>                        | <b>32,959</b>                          | <b>18,087</b>                   |

Statement of  
Capital Financial Performance  
for the period ending 30 April 2021

|                                       | Year to date \$000's |                     |              | Actuals as<br>% of Total<br>Budget | Actual as<br>% of<br>Annual<br>Forecast | Full year \$000's         |                             |                      |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|--------------|------------------------------------|---|---------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|
|                                       | YTD<br>Actual        | YTD Total<br>Budget | Variance     |                                    |   | Total<br>Annual<br>Budget | Total<br>Annual<br>Forecast | Forecast<br>Variance |
| <b>Capital Works</b>                  |                      |                     |              |                                    |   |                           |                             |                      |
| District Facilities                   | 6,768                | 3,994               | (2,775)      | 40%                                | 35%                                     | 17,103                    | 19,399                      | (2,296)              |
| Stormwater                            | 859                  | 1,339               | 480          | 47%                                | 69%                                     | 1,844                     | 1,243                       | 602                  |
| Solid Waste                           | 22                   | 96                  | 74           | 5%                                 | 6%                                      | 421                       | 395                         | 26                   |
| Wastewater                            | 4,626                | 8,715               | 4,089        | 40%                                | 63%                                     | 11,696                    | 7,369                       | 4,327                |
| Water Supply                          | 2,431                | 5,733               | 3,302        | 37%                                | 23%                                     | 6,549                     | 10,550                      | (4,001)              |
|                                       | <b>14,707</b>        | <b>19,877</b>       | <b>5,170</b> | <b>39%</b>                         | <b>38%</b>                              | <b>37,614</b>             | <b>38,955</b>               | <b>(1,342)</b>       |
| Roading & Footpaths                   | 32,777               | 27,516              | (5,261)      | 72%                                | 60%                                     | 45,362                    | 54,854                      | (9,493)              |
| <b>Other</b>                          |                      |                     |              |                                    |   |                           |                             |                      |
| Environmental Management              | 1,251                | 1,633               | 382          | 65%                                | 64%                                     | 1,914                     | 1,961                       | (47)                 |
| Governance & Strategic Administration | 2,666                | 2,017               | (649)        | 62%                                | 51%                                     | 4,286                     | 5,187                       | (900)                |
| Customer Services                     | 478                  | 1,307               | 829          | 34%                                | 32%                                     | 1,423                     | 1,513                       | (90)                 |
| Strategic Planning                    | 0                    | 0                   | 0            | 0%                                 | 0%                                      | 0                         | 40                          | (40)                 |
| <b>Total Capital Works</b>            | <b>51,878</b>        | <b>52,349</b>       | <b>471</b>   | <b>57%</b>                         | <b>51%</b>                              | <b>90,599</b>             | <b>102,510</b>              | <b>(11,911)</b>      |

**Achieved for the year:**

As at 30 April 2021 the operational surplus, which excludes capital income, is \$30.3 million against a planned \$21.3 million. The Operational budget variance is therefore a 42% surplus. However, we have received considerable income in relation to MBIE Flood Program, ESEO, PGF and 3 water reform that were not in the budget, if these are excluded the variance drops to 25%.

Major savings are in general expenses for provision for doubtful debts which is an annualised process and savings in contractor & professional fees with a number of consultants not yet engaged across the organisation.

We are currently tracking above the forecasted operational income. This is due to PGF funds received for Lake Omapere for de-mobilisation costs, operational subsidy received to support capital projects and MBIE grant under the Te Tai Tokerau Worker Redeployment programme. Furthermore, we have received half of the Ministry of Business, Innovation & Employment grant for Twin Cost Cycle Trail and a NZTA subsidy for the July storm event.

| <b>Funded by:</b> | <b>Forecasted Overspend</b> |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| PGF               | 973                         |
| ESEO              | 2,158                       |
| DIA - 3W Reform   | 1,410                       |
| NZTA              | 453                         |
| MBIE              | -1                          |
| FNDC              | 2,656                       |
| <b>Total</b>      | <b>\$ 7,649</b>             |

## Capital Spend Analysis

as at 30-Apr-2021

|                                       | YTD (\$000's) |               | Full Year (\$000's) |                      |                     |                    |                       |                      |                      |                             |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| LTP Group                             | YTD Actual    | Commitments   | LTP Budget          | Carry Forward Budget | Total Annual Budget | Actual vs Budget % | Total Annual Forecast | Actual vs Forecast % | Forecast vs Budget % | Forecast vs Budget Variance |
| District Facilities                   | 5,877         | 3,964         | 9,405               | 4,031                | 13,436              | 43.7%              | 14,567                | 40.3%                | 108%                 | 1,131                       |
| Wastewater                            | 4,626         | 2,231         | 4,936               | 6,760                | 11,696              | 39.6%              | 7,369                 | 62.8%                | 63%                  | (4,327)                     |
| Water Supply                          | 1,276         | 1,424         | 1,935               | 1,950                | 3,886               | 32.8%              | 3,169                 | 40.3%                | 82%                  | (717)                       |
| Stormwater                            | 859           | 94            | 1,179               | 666                  | 1,844               | 46.6%              | 1,243                 | 69.1%                | 67%                  | (602)                       |
| Solid Waste                           | 22            | 139           | 325                 | 96                   | 421                 | 5.2%               | 395                   | 5.6%                 | 94%                  | (26)                        |
| <b>Project Delivery Team Subtotal</b> | <b>12,660</b> | <b>7,852</b>  | <b>17,781</b>       | <b>13,503</b>        | <b>31,284</b>       | <b>40.5%</b>       | <b>26,742</b>         | <b>47.3%</b>         | <b>85%</b>           | <b>(4,541)</b>              |
| Roading & Footpaths                   | 27,035        | 16,801        | 37,388              | 7,974                | 45,362              | 59.6%              | 43,234                | 62.5%                | 95%                  | (2,128)                     |
| <b>IAM Total</b>                      | <b>39,696</b> | <b>24,653</b> | <b>55,169</b>       | <b>21,477</b>        | <b>76,645</b>       | <b>51.8%</b>       | <b>69,976</b>         | <b>56.7%</b>         | <b>91%</b>           | <b>(6,669)</b>              |
| Environmental Management              | 1,160         | 357           | 0                   | 1,182                | 1,182               | 98.2%              | 1,471                 | 78.9%                | 124%                 | 289                         |
| Governance & Strategic Administration | 2,666         | 917           | 2,334               | 1,952                | 4,286               | 62.2%              | 5,187                 | 51.4%                | 121%                 | 900                         |
| Customer Services                     | 478           | 79            | 490                 | 933                  | 1,423               | 33.6%              | 1,513                 | 31.6%                | 106%                 | 90                          |
| Strategic Planning                    | 0             | 0             | 0                   | 0                    | 0                   | 0.0%               | 40                    | 0.0%                 | 0%                   | 40                          |
| <b>Other Total</b>                    | <b>4,305</b>  | <b>1,353</b>  | <b>2,824</b>        | <b>4,067</b>         | <b>6,891</b>        | <b>62.5%</b>       | <b>8,210</b>          | <b>52.4%</b>         | <b>119%</b>          | <b>1,320</b>                |
| <b>Sub Total</b>                      | <b>44,000</b> | <b>26,005</b> | <b>57,992</b>       | <b>25,544</b>        | <b>83,536</b>       | <b>52.7%</b>       | <b>78,186</b>         | <b>56.3%</b>         | <b>94%</b>           | <b>(5,350)</b>              |
| <b>DIA Projects</b>                   |               |               |                     |                      |                     |                    |                       |                      |                      |                             |
| Water Supply                          | 1,155         | 683           | 2,560               | 103                  | 2,663               | 43.4%              | 7,381                 | 15.7%                | 277%                 | 4,718                       |
| Wastewater                            | 0             | 0             | 0                   | 0                    | 0                   | 0.0%               | 0                     | 0.0%                 | 0%                   | 0                           |
| Stormwater                            | 0             | 0             | 0                   | 0                    | 0                   | 0.0%               | 0                     | 0.0%                 | 0%                   | 0                           |
| <b>Total DIA Projects</b>             | <b>1,155</b>  | <b>683</b>    | <b>2,560</b>        | <b>103</b>           | <b>2,663</b>        | <b>43.4%</b>       | <b>7,381</b>          | <b>15.7%</b>         | <b>277%</b>          | <b>4,718</b>                |
| <b>ESEO Projects</b>                  |               |               |                     |                      |                     |                    |                       |                      |                      |                             |
| District Facilities                   | 891           | 1,470         | 3,667               | 0                    | 3,667               | 24.3%              | 4,832                 | 18.4%                | 132%                 | 1,165                       |
| Environmental Management              | 90            | 10            | 0                   | 733                  | 733                 | 12.3%              | 490                   | 18.4%                | 67%                  | (243)                       |
| Roading & Footpaths                   | 5,742         | 8,342         | 0                   | 0                    | 0                   | 0.0%               | 11,621                | 49.4%                | 0%                   | 11,621                      |
| <b>Total ESEO Projects</b>            | <b>6,723</b>  | <b>9,822</b>  | <b>3,667</b>        | <b>733</b>           | <b>4,400</b>        | <b>152.8%</b>      | <b>16,942</b>         | <b>39.7%</b>         | <b>385%</b>          | <b>12,543</b>               |
| <b>Total</b>                          | <b>51,878</b> | <b>36,511</b> | <b>64,219</b>       | <b>26,380</b>        | <b>90,599</b>       | <b>57.3%</b>       | <b>102,510</b>        | <b>50.6%</b>         | <b>113%</b>          | <b>11,911</b>               |

### Comments:

The 'Total Annual Forecast' is what is expected to be spent by 30 June 2021.

## Operations

### Contact Centre / Service Centres

- 138.50% increase in financial interactions at Service Centres (2,063 up from 865)
- 52.43% increase in calls to the Contact Centre (15,438 up from 10,128)
- 21.67% decrease in AskUs emails received (2,815 down from 3,594)
- 151.35% increase in building inspections booked (1,214 up from 483)
- 100.99% increase in visits to Service Centres (5,660 up from 2,816)

### i-SITEs

- 50% increase in visitor numbers (40,711 up from 27,116)
- 173% increase in retail revenue (\$27,899 up from \$10,188)
- 35% increase in transaction spend (\$30,459 up from \$22,562)
- 62% increase in transaction numbers (9,293 up from 5,715)

### Libraries

- 5.4% increase in digital library use (110,152 to 116,075), reflecting ongoing customer uptake of the increased range of digital content
- 0.5% increase in book checkouts (63,973 to 64,291), reflecting an active school holiday period, and the busiest month of March since 2018.

## Regulatory Services

### Environmental Services

A total of 1,447 Requests for Service (RFS) were received and 1,458 RFSs were closed during the March/April period for Environmental Services.

### Animal Management

The Animal Management team received a total of 700 RFS during March-April 2021. Despite the high number the Animal Management team have continued to meet response with an average of 97.5% for urgent RFS and 95% non-urgent.

For the 2020/2021 registration period, there are now 8,707 dogs registered. This figure is made up of renewed registrations and new dog registrations. The team is still working through a follow-up program for known unregistered dogs and updating the data base.

76 dogs were impounded across the District during the March/April period, with 12 dogs rehomed through the Council's website. Over 3,000 likes have now been received on the FNDC 'Adoptadog' page. This is due to the ongoing effort and commitment from the team to find the best outcome for dogs in our care.

The Northern Animal Shelter is on track to be operational and receive dogs from July 2021. Once operational the temporary dog pound in Horeke will be decommissioned.



## **Environmental Health and Monitoring Compliance**

A total of 64 food business verifications were completed and 45 proactive alcohol license Good Host Visits (GHV) were conducted in March/April 2021. 77% of all licensed premises in the district have now had GHV's.

Noise complaint RFS remain high with a total of 225 noise complaints received in the March/April period, with 128 received in April. This is most likely reflective of the two long weekends in that month. Response rates average for the March/April period at 74.2% for urban areas and 83.3% for rural areas. Resourcing for Police assistance is affecting ability to respond to some incidents on time for First Security

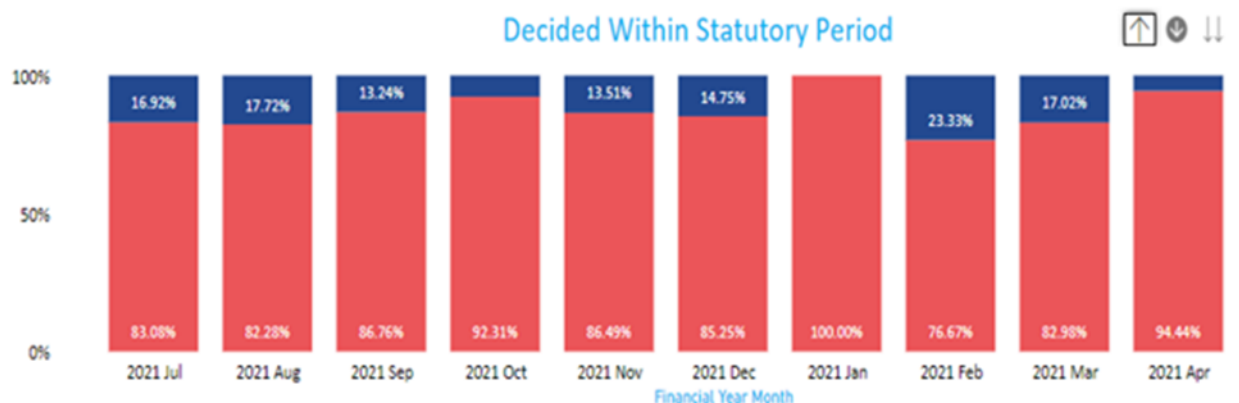
A new Parking Warden started on 22 February 2021 and began monitoring in March. A total of 172 infringements for stationary vehicle offences have been issued over the March/April period.

## **Resource Consents Management**

There has been a significant increase in the number of resource consent applications, with 144 applications received over the March/April period.

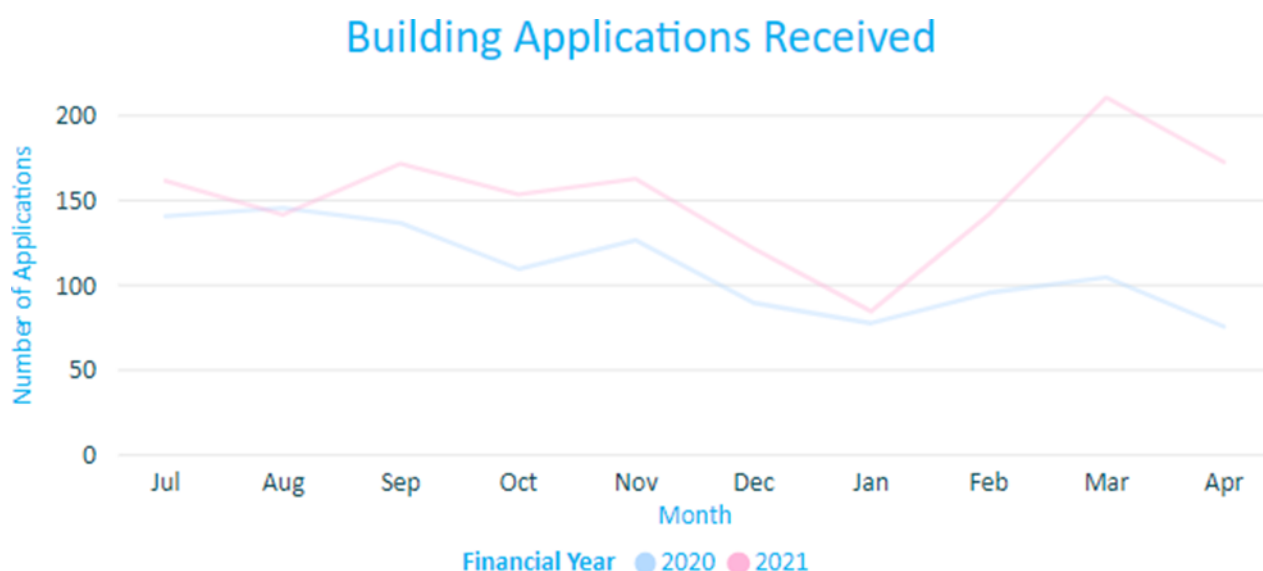
With the high number of applications received, there has been a need to use consultant planners and Engineers. Year to date 26% of applications have been sent to consultant Planners and 55% to consultant Engineers.

Processing applications within statutory requirements continues to improve with 83% achieved in March and 94% in April 2021. Some of the processing delays have been due to obtaining Engineering advice and stormwater matters on time.



Discounts applied to consent processing for 2020/2021 to the end of April is \$43,768.88. For the same period last year there had been \$179,958.79 applied. This amount is reflective of meeting statutory timeframes.

## Building Consents Management

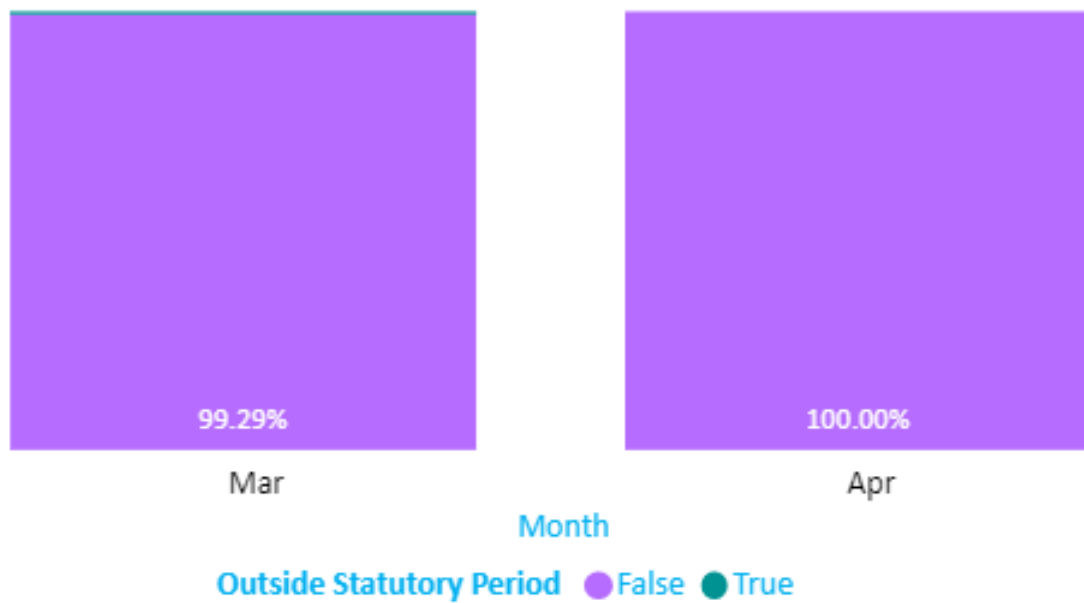


Consents received for March (210) and April (172) were higher than last year for both months.

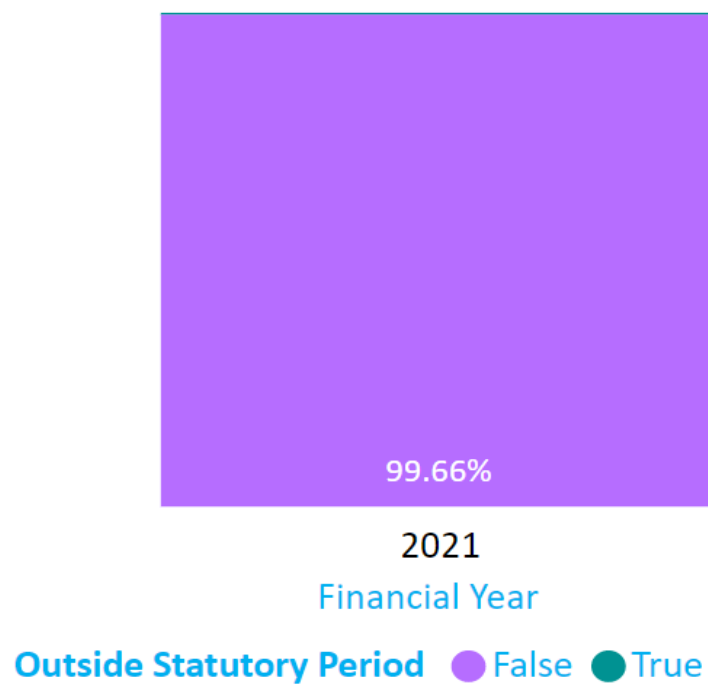
**Building consent 20-day compliance rates for March and April.**



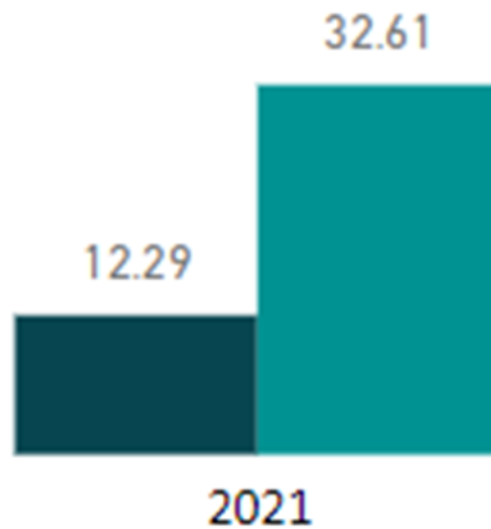
## Granted or Refused Within Statutory Period



## Granted or Refused Within Statutory Period

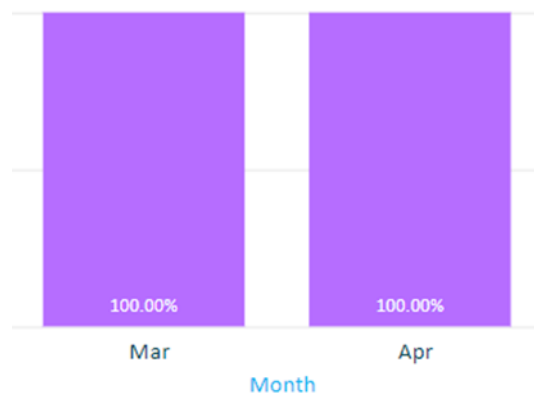


99.66% of building consents were issued within the legislative timeframe of twenty working days during the 2020/21 Financial Year.

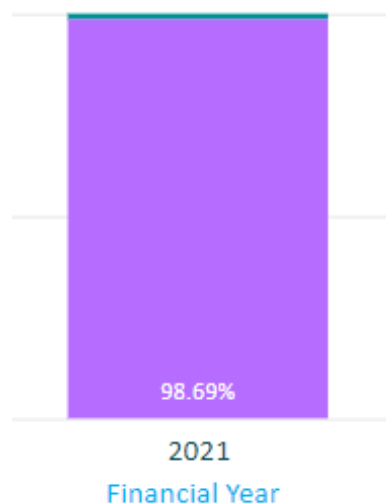


The average number of days to issue a consent for the above period is 12.29 working days (against the 20-day statutory requirement) and 32.61 calendar days.

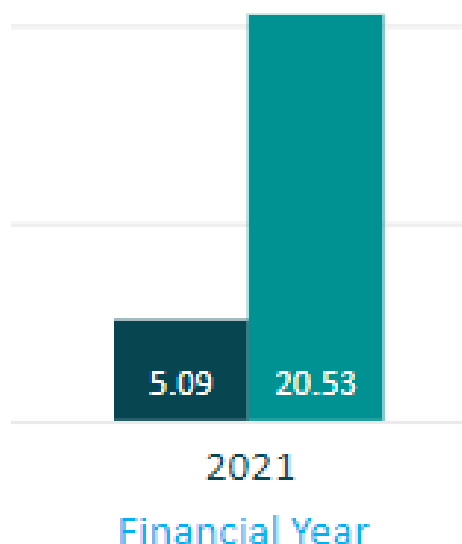
#### Code Compliance Certificate 20-day compliance rates for March and April



- Code Compliance Certificate compliance for March and April is 100%



- Overall Code Compliance Certificate compliance for 2021 remains above 95%, but the team is looking to improve monthly compliance to 100%.



- Small improvement in statutory days to issue Code Compliance Certificate's, which currently takes on average 5.09 days to issue.

### Building Accreditation / Building Consent Authority (BCA) Update

The BCA is currently accredited and will have a remote check in with IANZ in October 2021 and a full audit in October 2022.

### Building Compliance

- 75 Building Warrant of Fitness (BWOFF) audits were undertaken during the March and April period.
- 99 RFS were received during March and April, consistent with the summer months of the previous year.
- 37 Notices to Fix were issued for breaches of the Building Act and 4 Infringements were issued for building-related breaches.

- A total of 23 Certificates of Acceptance were approved.

### **Swimming Pools**

61 pool inspections were carried out during the months of March and April; the fail rate for this period was still around 30%. This total remains a concern, however the figures are consistent with other regions such as Auckland. Follow up checks are planned during the coming weeks and appropriate steps will be taken to achieve compliance.

## **Infrastructure and Asset Management (IAM)**

---

The IAM business report is circulated under separate cover to Elected Members and is publicly available through the FNDC website as an [Infrastructure Network Committee agenda item](#).

**8 TE WĀHANGA TŪMATAITI / PUBLIC EXCLUDED****RESOLUTION TO EXCLUDE THE PUBLIC****RECOMMENDATION**

That the public be excluded from the following parts of the proceedings of this meeting.

The general subject matter of each matter to be considered while the public is excluded, the reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter, and the specific grounds under section 48 of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 for the passing of this resolution are as follows:

| <b>General subject of each matter to be considered</b>                              | <b>Reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter</b>   | <b>Ground(s) under section 48 for the passing of this resolution</b>  |
|---|--|---|
| <b>8.1 - Confirmation of Previous Minutes - Public Excluded</b>                     | <p>s7(2)(a) - the withholding of the information is necessary to protect the privacy of natural persons, including that of deceased natural persons</p> <p>s7(2)(b)(ii) - the withholding of the information is necessary to protect information where the making available of the information would be likely unreasonably to prejudice the commercial position of the person who supplied or who is the subject of the information</p> <p>s7(2)(f)(i) - free and frank expression of opinions by or between or to members or officers or employees of any local authority</p> <p>s7(2)(h) - the withholding of the information is necessary to enable Council to carry out, without prejudice or disadvantage, commercial activities</p> | <p>s48(1)(a)(i) - the public conduct of the relevant part of the proceedings of the meeting would be likely to result in the disclosure of information for which good reason for withholding would exist under section 6 or section 7</p> |
| <b>8.2 - Award of the Russell Landfill Operations, Waste and Recycling Contract</b> | <p>s7(2)(b)(ii) - the withholding of the information is necessary to protect information where the making available of the information would be likely unreasonably to prejudice the commercial position of the person who supplied or who is the subject of the information</p> <p>s7(2)(f)(i) - free and frank expression of opinions by or between or to members or officers or employees of any local authority</p> <p>s7(2)(i) - the withholding of the information is necessary to enable Council to carry on, without prejudice or</p>  | <p>s48(1)(a)(i) - the public conduct of the relevant part of the proceedings of the meeting would be likely to result in the disclosure of information for which good reason for withholding would exist under section 6 or section 7</p> |

|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
|  | disadvantage, negotiations (including commercial and industrial negotiations)  |  |
| <b>8.3 - Audit New Zealand Fraud Questionnaire for Governance - May 2021 2</b> | <p>s7(2)(b)(ii) - the withholding of the information is necessary to protect information where the making available of the information would be likely unreasonably to prejudice the commercial position of the person who supplied or who is the subject of the information</p> <p>s7(2)(e) - the withholding of the information is necessary to avoid prejudice to measures that prevent or mitigate material loss to members of the public</p> <p>s7(2)(f)(i) - free and frank expression of opinions by or between or to members or officers or employees of any local authority</p> <p>s7(2)(i) - the withholding of the information is necessary to enable Council to carry on, without prejudice or disadvantage, negotiations (including commercial and industrial negotiations)</p> | s48(1)(a)(i) - the public conduct of the relevant part of the proceedings of the meeting would be likely to result in the disclosure of information for which good reason for withholding would exist under section 6 or section 7 |
|  |  |  |



**9 KARAKIA WHAKAMUTUNGA – CLOSING PRAYER**

**10 TE KAPINGA HUI / MEETING CLOSE**